Reverse Engineering the Eview Code in the FRB/US Model

Gary Young

June 19, 2016

2 June 19, 2016

Contents

1	Introduction	5						
$\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{I}}$	Appendices 7							
\mathbf{A}	File Contents	9						
	A.1 setup.sh	9						
	A.2 check.sh	10						
	A.3 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg . . .	11						
	$A.4 \ \ srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg \ . \ . \ .$	12						
	A.5 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg	14						
	A.6 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg	17						
	A.7 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg	22						
	A.8 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg	26						
	A.9 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg	28						
	A.10 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg	29						
	A.11 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg	32						
	A.12 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg	36						
	A.13 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg	42						
	A.14 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg	48						
	A.15 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg	56						
	A.16 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg	71						
	A.17 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg	75						
	A.18 srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg	87						
	A.19 srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg	95						
	A.20 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg	178						
	A.21 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg	181						
	A.22 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg	184						
	A.23 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg	188						
	A.24 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg	191						
	A.25 srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg	194						
	A.26~srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg~.~.~.~.	195						
	A.27 srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg	198						
	A.28 srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg	202						
	A.29 srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg	205						

4	June 19	, 2016

	$A.30\; srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg ~~.~.~.~.~.$	208
В	Notes, Bibliography and Indexes	211
	B.1 Chunks	211
	B.2 Index	213

Chapter 1

Introduction

6 June 19, 2016

Appendices

Appendix A

File Contents

Notice that I've had to change underscores in file and directory names when I create them with noweb. I use the "setup.sh" bash script to create the directory structure, and the "check.sh" bash script to compare the renamed Eview files to the originals. I have to ignore white space in the comparison because the original source files are not consistent with using either Microsoft or Linux line ending characters.

A.1 setup.sh

```
9  \( \setup.sh 9 \) \( \setup.sh 8 \) \(
```

A.2 check.sh

10 $\langle check.sh \ 10 \rangle \equiv$

cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_frbus_cfs/ld_frbus_cfs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_frbus_eqs/ld_frbus_eqs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_mce_cfs/ld_mce_cfs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/ad cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_mce_eqs/ld_mce_eqs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/ad cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_some_eqs/ld_some_eqs.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package, cfile=frbus_package/addins/ld_varinfo/ld_varinfo.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/ad cfile=frbus_package/addins/regadd.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg cfile=frbus_package/programs/example1.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg; cfile=frbus_package/programs/example2.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg; cfile=frbus_package/programs/example3.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg; cfile=frbus_package/programs/example4.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg; cfile=frbus_package/programs/ocpolicy.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpo cfile=frbus_package/programs/pings.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.pr cfile=frbus_package/programs/plot_resids.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot_resids.prg; cfile=frbus_package/programs/stochsim.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg; cfile=frbus_package/subs/master_library.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master cfile=frbus_package/subs/mce_solve_library.prg; ofile=srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce cfile=mce_solve_package/example1.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg; cfile=mce_solve_package/example2.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg; cfile=mce_solve_package/example3.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg; cfile=mce_solve_package/example4.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg; cfile=mce_solve_package/example5.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg; cfile=mce_solve_package/mce_solve_library.prg; ofile=srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.s cfile=state_space_package/data_transformations.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package cfile=state_space_package/estimation_code.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package/es cfile=state_space_package/frbus_supply_estimation.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package/frbus_supply_estimation.prg; cfile=state_space_package/frbus_supply_filter.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package cfile=state_space_package/initial_values.prg; ofile=srcEview/state.space.package/ini

This code is written to file check.sh.

Uses data_transformations 195, example1 29 178, example2 32 181, example3 36 184, example4 42 188, example5 191, frbus.supply.filter 205, frbus_supply_estimation 202, initial_values 208, ld_frbus_cfs 11a 11b, ld_frbus_eqs 12b 13, ld_mce_cfs 14b 15, ld_mce_eqs 17 18, ld_some_eqs 22 23, ld_varinfo 26 27, master_library 87, mce_solve_library 95 194, ocpolicy 48, pings 56, plot_resids 71, regadd 28b, and stochsim 75.

A.3 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg

```
11a
       \langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg  11a\rangle \equiv
          ⟨load frbus coefficients 11b⟩
          (load frbus coefficients call 12a)
       This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg.
          ld_frbus_cfs, used in chunks 10, 12a, 28b, 29, 36, 72, 76, and 172.
        \langle load\ frbus\ coefficients\ 11b \rangle \equiv
11b
                                                                                 (11a)
          subroutine ld_frbus_cfs(string %mname, string %mpath)
          'Load coefficients for frbus version %mname from a text file in directory %mpath
          'that has been previously created by the script eq_docs2eviews.
            %cpath = %mpath + %mname + "_coeffs.txt"
            delete(noerr) coefpath
            text coefpath
            coefpath.append(file) %cpath
            svector coefpathv = coefpath.@svectornb
            for !i = 1 to 900
              svector cofname = @wsplit(coefpathv(!i))
              %y1 = cofname(1)
                 if @left(%y1,6) = "theend" then
                   exitloop
                 endif
              %y2 = cofname(2)
              %y3 = cofname(3)
              coef({%y2}) {%y1}
              {%y1}.fill {%y3}
              next
          endsub
       Defines:
          ld_frbus_cfs, used in chunks 10, 12a, 28b, 29, 36, 72, 76, and 172.
```

```
12 frbuseview.nw June 19, 2016
```

```
12a
       \langle load\ frbus\ coefficients\ call\ 12a \rangle \equiv
                                                                             (11a)
         if Olen(Ooption(1)) < 1 or Olen(Ooption(2)) < 1 then
           @uiprompt("Error: ld_frbus_cfs requires model name and model path")
           stop
         endif
         %temp = @equaloption("modelname")
         if @len(%temp)>0 then
                  %mname = %temp
         endif
         %temp = @equaloption("modelpath")
         if @len(%temp)>0 then
                  %mpath = %temp
         endif
         call ld_frbus_cfs(%mname, %mpath)
       Uses ld_frbus_cfs 11a 11b.
```

${ m A.4 \quad srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.p}$

```
12b \langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg 12b\rangle \equiv \langle load\ frbus\ equations 13\rangle
```

```
⟨load frbus equations call 14a⟩
```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg.

ld_frbus_eqs, used in chunks 10, 14a, 28b, 29, 36, 72, 76, and 172.

```
13
      \langle load\ frbus\ equations\ 13 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (12b)
        subroutine ld_frbus_eqs(string %mname, string %mpath)
        'Create eviews model %mname and load it with the equations for frbus version
        '%mname that are in a text file in directory %mpath that was previously created
        'by the script eq_docs2eviews.
          %epath = %mpath + %mname
          if @fileexist(%epath) <> 1 then
           %epath = %mpath + %mname + "_eqs.txt"
          endif
          delete(noerr) eqtext
          text eqtext
          eqtext.append(file) %epath
          svector eqtextv = eqtext.@svectornb
          model {%mname}
          !eqnum = 0
          %eqcode = " "
          for !i = 1 to 3000
            %y = eqtextv(!i)
            if @isempty(%y) = 0 then
              'string is not blank
              if @left(\%y,6) = "theend" then
                %x = @replace(%eqcode," _"," ")
                 {\mname}.append {\mathbb{k}x}
                exitloop
                endif
               !k = @instr(%y,":")
              if !k > 0 then
                 'string contains the start of a new equation
                 !eqnum = !eqnum + 1
                 if !eqnum > 0 then
                   %x = @replace(%eqcode," _"," ")
                   {\mname}.append {\mathbb{x}}
                   endif
                %eqcode = @mid(%y,!k+1)
                else
                 'string contains the continuation of an equation
                %eqcode = %eqcode + %y
                 endif
```

```
14
              frbuseview.nw
                                                                      June 19, 2016
                endif
              next
         endsub
       Defines:
         ld_frbus_eqs, used in chunks 10, 14a, 28b, 29, 36, 72, 76, and 172.
       \langle load\ frbus\ equations\ call\ 14a \rangle \equiv
                                                                               (12b)
14a
         if Olen(Ooption(1)) < 1 or Olen(Ooption(2)) < 1 then
           @uiprompt("Error: ld_frbus_eqs requires model name and model path")
           stop
         endif
         %temp = @equaloption("modelname")
         if @len(%temp)>0 then
                  %mname = %temp
         endif
         %temp = @equaloption("modelpath")
         if @len(%temp)>0 then
                  %mpath = %temp
         endif
         call ld_frbus_eqs(%mname, %mpath)
       Uses ld_frbus_eqs 12b 13.
```

A.5 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg

```
\langle \langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg 14b\rangle \langle \langle load mce coefficients 15\rangle
\langle load mce coefficients call 16\rangle
This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg. Defines:
    1d.mce.cfs, used in chunks 10, 16, 28b, and 172.
```

```
15
      \langle load\ mce\ coefficients\ 15 \rangle \equiv
                                                                      (14b)
        subroutine ld_mce_cfs(string %pfname, string %pfpath, string %mceeqs)
        'This subroutine is used for setting up the particular type of frbus simulations
        'with model-consistent expectations in which a separate model is created
        'containing only those expectations equations chosen to have model-consistent
        'solutions. For those expectations variables, the initial z character is replaced
        'with w.
        'Load coefficients for frbus version %pfname from a text file in directory %pfpath
        'that has been previously created by the script eq_docs2eviews. Only those
        'coefficient vectors whose names are in the string %mceeqs are stored.
          %cpath = %pfpath + %pfname + "_coeffs.txt"
          delete(noerr) coefpathpv
          text coefpathpv
          coefpathpv.append(file) %cpath
          svector coefpathv = coefpathpv.@svectornb
          for !i = 1 to 900
            svector cofname = @wsplit(coefpathv(!i))
            %v1 = cofname(1)
              if @left(%y1,6) = "theend" then
                exitloop
              endif
            %y2 = cofname(2)
            %y3 = cofname(3)
            for !j = 1 to @wcount(%mceeqs)
              %z = @lower(@word(%mceeqs,!j))
              %z1 = @mid(%y1,3)
              if %z = %z1 then
                %y1 = @replace(%y1,"z","w")
                coef({%y2}) {%y1}
                {%y1}.fill {%y3}
                exitloop
              endif
            next
          next
```

 ${\tt endsub}$

Defines:

ld_mce_cfs, used in chunks 10, 16, 28b, and 172.

```
16
     \langle load\ mce\ coefficients\ call\ 16 \rangle \equiv
                                                                      (14b)
        if @len(@option(1)) < 1 or @len(@option(2)) < 1 or @len(@option(3)) < 1 then
         @uiprompt("Error: ld_mce_cfs requires four parameters: pf model name, pf model pa
         stop
       endif
       %temp = @equaloption("pfname")
       if @len(%temp)>0 then
                %pfname = %temp
       endif
       %temp = @equaloption("pfpath")
       if @len(%temp)>0 then
               %pfpath = %temp
       endif
       %temp = @equaloption("mceeqs")
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
                %mceeqs = %temp
       endif
             ' Added so that users may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations
             ' passing in a list that may change in the future.
             ' Model consistent Asset Pricing
            %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10
              ' Wages and prices
             %s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "
             ' Others - all PAC expectations
            %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zpi10 zpib5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxnfbd z:
            if %mceeqs = "-all" then
               %mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
            endif
            if mceqs = -mcap then
              %mceeqs = %s_mcap
             if %mceeqs = "-wp" then
               mceeqs = ms_wp
             endif
             if %mceeqs = "-mcap+wp" then
               mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp
            if @left(%mceeqs, 7) = "-allbut" then
               %tmp = %mceeqs
               %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
               %mceeqs = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
             endif
            string zvar_list = %mceeqs
            scalar nzvars = @wcount(%mceeqs)
            group zvars {%mceeqs}
```

```
call ld_mce_cfs(%pfname, %pfpath, %mceeqs)
Uses ld_mce_cfs 14b 15.
```

A.6 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg

17 $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg 17 \rangle \equiv \langle load \ mce \ equations \ 18 \rangle \langle load \ mce \ equations \ call \ 21 \rangle$

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg. Defines:

ld_mce_eqs, used in chunks 10, 21, 28b, and 172.

```
18
     \langle load\ mce\ equations\ 18 \rangle \equiv
                                                                       (17)
        subroutine ld_mce_eqs(string %pfname, string %pfpath, string %mcename, string %mceeq
        'This subroutine is used for setting up the particular type of frbus simulations
        'with model-consistent expectations in which a separate model is created
        'containing only those expectations equations chosen to have model-consistent
        'solutions. For those expectations variables, the initial z character is replaced
        'with w.
        'Create eviews model %mcename and load it with the equations for frbus version
        '%pfname that are in a text file in directory %pfpath that was previously created
        'by the script eq_docs2eviews. Only those equations whose names are in the
        'string %mceeqs are included.
        ' revised 2/11/13 to add a check that version %pfname contains an equation for each
        ' name in %mceeqs
         %epath = %pfpath + %pfname + "_eqs.txt"
         delete(noerr) eqtextp
         text eqtextp
         eqtextp.append(file) %epath
         svector eqtextpv = eqtextp.@svectornb
         %coded = " "
         model {%mcename}
         !eqnum = 0
         %eqnew = " "
         %eqold = " "
         %eqcode = " "
         %eqcodeold = " "
         for !i = 1 to 3000
           %appendit = "no"
           %exitloop = "no"
           %y = eqtextpv(!i)
           if @isempty(%y) = 0 then
              'string is not blank
             if @left(%y,6) = "theend" then
                'string contains end-of-file flag
                %appendit = "yes"
```

%exitloop = "yes"
%eqold = %eqnew

%eqcodeold = %eqcode

```
endif
      !k = @instr(%y,":")
     if !k > 0 then
        'string contains the start of a new equation
       %appendit = "yes"
        !eqnum = !eqnum + 1
        if !eqnum > 0 then
         %eqold = %eqnew
         %eqcodeold = %eqcode
         endif
        %eqnew = @left(%y,!k-1)
       %eqcode = @mid(%y,!k+1)
        'string contains the continuation of an equation
        %eqcode = %eqcode + %y
       endif
      if %appendit = "yes" then
        'add equation to model only if it is one with mce expectations
       for !j = 1 to @wcount(%mceeqs)
         %z = @lower(@word(%mceeqs,!j))
         if %z = %eqold then
           %x = @replace(%eqcodeold," _"," ")
           %x = @replace(%x,"z","w")
            {%mcename}.append {%x}
            %coded = %coded + " " + %z
            exitloop
            endif
         next
        endif
     if %exitloop = "yes" then
        exitloop
        endif
     endif
   next
' check that model %mcename contains an equation for each variable in %mceeqs
 !j = @wcount(%mceeqs)
  !k = @wcount(%coded)
 if !j <> !k then
   %z = @wnotin(@lower(%mceeqs),@lower(%coded))
   %errstring = "Error in ld_mce_eqs addin: Model " + %mcename
```

```
20 frbuseview.nw June 19, 2016
```

```
%errstring = %errstring + " does not contain equation(s) for variable(s): " + %
%errstring = %errstring + ". Execution stopped."
@uiprompt(%errstring)
stop
endif
```

endsub

Defines:

 ${\tt ld_mce_eqs}, \ used \ in \ chunks \ 10, \ 21, \ 28b, \ and \ 172.$

```
21
      \langle load\ mce\ equations\ call\ 21 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (17)
        if Qlen(Qoption(1)) < 1 or Qlen(Qoption(2)) < 1 or Qlen(Qoption(3)) < 1 or Qlen(Qoption(4)) < 1
          @uiprompt("Error: ld_mce_eqs requires five parameters: pf model name, pf model path, mce mod
          stop
        endif
        %temp = @equaloption("pfname")
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
                %pfname = %temp
        endif
        %temp = @equaloption("pfpath")
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
                %pfpath = %temp
        endif
        %temp = @equaloption("mcename")
        if @len(%temp)>0 then
                %mcename = %temp
        endif
        %temp = @equaloption("mceeqs")
        if @len(%temp) >0 then
                %mceeqs = %temp
        endif
             ' Added so that users may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations instead of
             ' passing in a list that may change in the future.
              ' Model consistent Asset Pricing
             %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10 zpib5 "
             ' Wages and prices
             %s_wp = "zpicxfezpieci"
              ' Others - all PAC expectations
             %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zpi10 zpib5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxbd zxbs zxbi zyh
             if %mceeqs = "-all" then
               %mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
             endif
             if %mceeqs = "-mcap" then
               %mceeqs = %s_mcap
             if %mceeqs = "-wp" then
               \mbox{\em mceeqs} = \mbox{\em ks_wp}
             if %mceeqs = "-mcap+wp" then
               mceeqs = %s_mcap + %s_wp
             if @left(%mceeqs, 7) = "-allbut" then
               %tmp = %mceeqs
               %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
               %mceeqs = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
```

```
' endif
```

- ' string zvar_list = %mceeqs
- scalar nzvars = @wcount(%mceeqs)
- ' group zvars {%mceeqs}

call ld_mce_eqs(%pfname, %pfpath, %mcename, %mceeqs) Uses ld_mce_eqs $17\ 18.$

A.7 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.ps

22 $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg 22 \rangle \equiv \langle load\ some\ equations\ 23 \rangle \langle load\ some\ equations\ call\ 25 \rangle$

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg. Defines:

 ld_some_eqs , used in chunks 10, 25, 28b, and 172.

23

 $\langle load \ some \ equations \ 23 \rangle \equiv$

%eqcodeold = " "

```
subroutine ld_some_eqs(string %mname, string %mpath, string %eqnames)
' Create eviews model %mname and load it with selected equations for frbus version
' %mname that are in a text file in directory %mpath that was previously created
' by the script eq_docs2eviews. Only those equations whose names match or do not match the
' equation names in the string %eqnames are included. If the first "word" in %eqnames is
' "allbut", then all equations but those listed will be included.
<sup>,</sup>*****************************
'parse equation string and put equation names in a table
 %allbut = "no"
 string zlist = " "
 zlist = zlist + %eqnames
 zlist = @trim(zlist)
     if @isempty(zlist) = 1 then
      @uiprompt("Error: input string to subroutine load_selected_equtions is empty!!")
      stop
      endif
 if @wfind(@upper(zlist), "ALLBUT") = 1 then
     %allbut = "yes"
    zlist = @wdrop(zlist,"ALLBUT")
    zlist = @wdrop(zlist,"allbut")
 endif
<sup>,</sup>*****************************
'parse equation file
 %epath = %mpath + %mname + "_eqs.txt"
 delete(noerr) eqtext
 text eqtext
 eqtext.append(file) %epath
 svector eqtextv = eqtext.@svectornb
 model {%mname}
  !eqnum = 0
 %eqnew = " "
 %eqold = " "
 %eqcode = " "
```

(22)

```
for !i = 1 to 3000
 %appendit = "no"
 %exitloop = "no"
 %y = eqtextv(!i)
 if @isempty(%y) = 0 then
   'string is not blank
   if @left(%y,6) = "theend" then
     %appendit = "yes"
     %exitloop = "yes"
     %eqold = %eqnew
     %eqcodeold = %eqcode
     endif
    !k = @instr(%y,":")
    if !k > 0 then
      'string contains the start of a new equation
     %appendit = "yes"
      !eqnum = !eqnum + 1
      if !eqnum > 0 then
       %eqold = %eqnew
       %eqcodeold = %eqcode
     eqnew = Oleft(%y,!k-1)
     %eqcode = @mid(%y,!k+1)
      'string contains the continuation of an equation
     %eqcode = %eqcode + %y
      endif
    if %appendit = "yes" then
      'check whether equation should be added to model
      !zswitch = 0
     for !j = 1 to @wcount(zlist)
        %z = @lower(@word(zlist,!j))
        if %z = %eqold then
         !zswitch = 1
          endif
        if %allbut = "no" and !zswitch = 1 then
         %x = @replace(%eqcodeold," _"," ")
          {%mname}.append {%x}
         exitloop
          endif
        if %allbut = "yes" and !j = @wcount(zlist) and !zswitch = 0 then
         %x = @replace(%eqcodeold," _"," ")
```

```
{\mname}.append {\mathcal{K}}
                                                                                                           endif
                                                                                               next
                                                                                     endif
                                                                          if %exitloop = "yes" then
                                                                                     exitloop
                                                                                     endif
                                                                          endif
                                                               next
                                          endsub
                               Defines:
                                         ld_some_eqs, used in chunks 10, 25, 28b, and 172.
                               \langle load \ some \ equations \ call \ 25 \rangle \equiv
25
                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  (22)
                                           \  \, \text{if } \mathbb{Q} \text{len}(\mathbb{Q} \text{option}(1)) \, < \, 1 \quad \text{or } \mathbb{Q} \text{len}(\mathbb{Q} \text{option}(2)) \, < \, 1 \, \text{ or } \mathbb{Q} \text{len}(\mathbb{Q} \text{option}(3)) \, < \, 1 \, \text{ then} \\ \  \, \text{then} \, \mathbb{Q} \text{option}(2) \, = \, 1 \, \text{option}(2) \, = \, 1 \,
                                                    @uiprompt("Error: ld_some_eqs requires model name and model pathand and eqnames")
                                                    stop
                                          endif
                                         %temp = @equaloption("modelname")
                                          if @len(%temp)>0 then
                                                                                     %mname = %temp
                                         endif
                                         %temp = @equaloption("modelpath")
                                         if @len(%temp)>0 then
                                                                                     %mpath = %temp
                                         endif
                                          %temp = @equaloption("eqnames")
                                         if @len(%temp)>0 then
                                                                                     %eqnames = %temp
                                         endif
                                         call ld_some_eqs(%mname, %mpath, %eqnames)
                               Uses \ {\tt ld\_some\_eqs} \ 22 \ 23.
```

${\bf A.8} \quad {\bf srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg}$

26 $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg\ 26 \rangle \equiv \langle load\ variable\ information\ 27 \rangle$

 $\langle load\ variable\ information\ call\ 28a \rangle$

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg. Defines:

ld_varinfo, used in chunks 10, 28, 72, and 76.

```
27
      \langle load\ variable\ information\ 27 \rangle \equiv
                                                                         (26)
        subroutine ld_varinfo(string %pathname)
        'Load varinfo information from %pathname in strings
          text vinfo_text
          vinfo_text.append(file) %pathname
          svector varinfo = vinfo_text.@svectornb
          string vinfo_vname = " "
          string vinfo_vtype = " "
          string vinfo_vrule = " "
          string vinfo_sector = " "
          string vinfo_stoch = " "
          string vinfo_decomp = " "
          for !i = 1 to 900
            %y1 = varinfo(!i)
            !ss = @instr(%y1," ")
            %vname = @mid(%y1,!ss+1,8)
            %vname = @rtrim(%vname)
            %vtype = @mid(%y1,!ss+107,1)
            %vrule = @mid(%y1,!ss+109,1)
            if %vrule = " " then
              %vrule = "0"
            endif
            %sector = @mid(%y1,!ss+120,1)
            if %sector = " " then
              %sector = "0"
            endif
            %stoch = @mid(%y1, !ss+128,2)
            decomp = Qmid(y1,!ss+135,2)
            if %vname = "ZZZBLANK" then
              scalar vinfo_size = !i-1
              exitloop
              endif
           vinfo_vname = vinfo_vname + " " + %vname
           vinfo_vtype = vinfo_vtype + " " + %vtype
           vinfo_vrule = vinfo_vrule + " " + %vrule
           vinfo_sector = vinfo_sector + " " + %sector
           vinfo_stoch = vinfo_stoch + " " + %stoch
           vinfo_decomp = vinfo_decomp + " " + %decomp
          next
        endsub
      Defines:
        ld_varinfo, used in chunks 10, 28, 72, and 76.
```

A.9 srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg

Uses ld_frbus_cfs 11a 11b, ld_frbus_eqs 12b 13, ld_mce_cfs 14b 15, ld_mce_eqs 17 18,

ld_some_eqs 22 23, and ld_varinfo 26 27.

```
\( \strcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg 28b \rightarrow \) addin(proc="ld_frbus_eqs",desc="Load FRB/US equations") ".\ld_frbus_eqs/ld_frbus_eqs addin(proc="ld_frbus_cfs",desc="Load FRB/US coefficients") ".\ld_frbus_cfs/ld_frbus_caddin(proc="ld_mce_eqs",desc="Load MCE equations") ".\ld_mce_eqs/ld_mce_eqs.prg" addin(proc="ld_mce_cfs",desc="Load MCE coefficients") ".\ld_mce_cfs/ld_mce_cfs.prg" addin(proc="ld_some_eqs",desc="Load some FRB/US equations") ".\ld_some_eqs/ld_some_eqaddin(proc="ld_varinfo",desc="Load variable information file") ".\ld_varinfo/ld_varinfo This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg.

Defines:
    regadd, used in chunk 10.
```

A.10 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg

```
29
    \langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg 29 \rangle \equiv
      ' Program for simple simulation under VAR expectations
      ' See FRB/US Simulation Basics document for information about
      ' this program
      ' Initial filename and parameter settings
      ' Subroutines
       include ../subs/master_library
      ' Workfile
       %wfstart = "1975q1"
       %wfend = "2030q4"
       %mainpage = "main"
       wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
      ' FRB/US model name and location
       %varmod = "stdver"
       %varpath = "../mods/"
      ' Input datbase
       %dbin = "../data/longbase"
      ' Simulation range
       %simstart = "2020q1"
       %simend = "2025q4"
      ' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
      ' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
      ' Load equations and coefficients
       ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
       ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
      ' Load data
       dbopen %dbin as longbase
       fetch(d=longbase) *
```

```
' Set monetary policy rule
 smpl @all
 call set_mp("dmpintay")
' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
 smpl @all
 dmptrsh = 0
 rffmin = -9999
 drstar = 0
' Set fiscal policy
 smpl @all
 call set_fp("dfpsrp")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
' Simulate a shock to monetary policy rule
%sufsim = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rffintay_aerr = rffintay_aerr + 1
```

smpl %simstart %simend {%varmod}.solve ' Make a graph smpl %simstart %simend series zero = 0series d_rff = rff{%sufsim} - rff series d_rg10 = rg10{%sufsim} - rg10 series d_lur = lur{%sufsim} - lur series d_pic4 = pic4{%sufsim} - pic4 graph fig1a.line zero d_rff fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate fig1a.legend -display graph fig1b.line zero d_rg10 fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield fig1b.legend -display graph fig1c.line zero d_lur fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate fig1c.legend -display graph fig1d.line zero d_pic4 fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter) fig1d.legend -display graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) Macroeconomic Effects of Funds Rate Perturbation\r(V fig1.align(2,1,1.25) show fig1

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg. Defines:
example1, used in chunk 10.

Uses group2zero 90a, groupnew 91, ld_frbus_cfs 11a 11b, ld_frbus_eqs 12b 13, master_library 87, set_fp 93, and set_mp 94a.

A.11 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg

```
32
    \langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg  32 \rangle \equiv
      ' Program for simple simulation with MCE expectations
      ' The switch variables %mcvars_wp and %mcvars_all control whether
      ' the assumption of MC expectations extends beyond the financial
      , sector
      ' See the Simulation Basics document for information about
      ' this program
      ' Initial filename and parameter settings
      ' Subroutines
       include ../subs/master_library
       include ../subs/mce_solve_library
      ' Workfile
       %wfstart = "1975q1"
       %wfend = "2100q4"
       %mainpage = "main"
       wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
      ' FRB/US model names and locations
       %varmod = "stdver"
       %varpath = "../mods/"
       %mcemod = "pfver"
       %mcepath = "../mods/"
      ' Input datbase
       %dbin = "../data/longbase"
      ' Simulation range
       %simstart = "2020q1"
       %simend
              = "2069q4"
      ' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
      ' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
```

```
' Specify MC expectations variables
    %mcvars_wp = "yes"
    %mcvars_all = "no"
' MCE asset pricing
    %zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zpib5 zpic58 "
' MCE elsewhere
    if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
          %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
    if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
          %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
          %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxbi zxbs zyh zyhp zy
          endif
' Load equations and coefficients
     call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,
' Load data
    dbopen %dbin as longdata
    fetch(d=longdata) *
' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
    smpl @all
    call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)
' Set monetary policy
    smpl @all
    call set_mp("dmpintay")
' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
    smpl @all
    dmptrsh = 0
    rffmin = -9999
    drstar = 0
' Set fiscal policy
    smpl @all
    call set_fp("dfpsrp")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
    smpl @all
    {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
    call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
```

```
call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {%mcemod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
 {%mcemod}.addassign @all
 {%mcemod}.addinit(v=n) @all
' Simulate a monetary policy shock
%sufsim = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 {%mcemod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rffintay_a = rffintay_a + 1
 %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
 %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
 %simstr = "type=single"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
' Make a graph
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 series zero = 0
 series d_rff = rff{%sufsim} - rff
```

```
series d_rg10 = rg10{%sufsim} - rg10
series d_lur = lur{%sufsim} - lur
series d_pic4 = pic4{%sufsim} - pic4
graph fig1a.line zero d_rff
fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
fig1a.legend -display
graph fig1b.line zero d_rg10
fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
fig1b.legend -display
graph fig1c.line zero d_lur
fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
fig1c.legend -display
graph fig1d.line zero d_pic4
fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
fig1d.legend -display
graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
%title = " Macroeconomic Effects of Funds Rate Shock\r"
if %mcvars_wp = "no" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
  %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing)"
if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
  %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing and Price-Wage Setting)"
  endif
if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
  %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in All Sectors)"
  endif
fig1.addtext(t, just(c), font("Arial", 16)) {%title}
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1
```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg. Defines:

example2, used in chunk 10.

Uses group2zero 90a, groupnew 91, make_frbus_mcevars 176, master_library 87, mce_load_frbus 172, mce_run 102, mce_solve_library 95 194, set_fp 93, and set_mp 94a.

A.12 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg

 $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg \ 36 \rangle \equiv$

- ' Program for simulation under VAR expectations that illustrates how
- ' to set the monetary policy options that impose the zero lower bound
- ' on the funds rate and delay the liftoff of the funds rate from the
- ' ZLB until either the unemployment rate falls below a threshold or
- ' inflation rises above a threshold.
- $^{\prime}$ See FRB/US Simulation Basics document for general information about
- ' this program.
- ' Additional notes:
- ' 1. The scenario involves a set of negative aggregate demand
- ' shocks and a positive risk premium shock that start in 2003q3,
- ' when the baseline (historical) funds rate is about one percent.
- ' The shocks are equal to the equation errors actually observed
- ' in the four quarters starting in 2008q4.
- ' 2. To impose the ZLB set %zb = "yes" (rather than "no")
- ' 3. To impose the policy liftfoff threshold conditions set both
- ' %zb = "yes" and %threshold = "yes". For illustrative purposes
- ' and reflecting the baseline conditions in 2003 and the years
- ' that immediately follow, the inflation threshold is set to 3.0
- ' and the unemployment threshold is set to 7.0, subject to the
- ' the adjustments described next.
- ' 4. Because the threshold conditions only make sense once the ZLB is
- ' binding, unemployment is above its threshold level (lurtrsh),
- ' and inflation is below its threshold (pitrsh), which is not the
- ' case in the initial simulation quarters, the program turns on the
- ' threshold code (using dmptrsh) in the 5th simulation quarter,
- ' at which point these conditions hold. In addition, for the threshold
- ' code to work properly, the endogenous switch variable dmptr must be
- ' zero in the quarter prior to the quarter in which the threshold code is
- ' turned on. This is accomplished by setting the baseline data on dmptr
- ' to zero and by setting the unemployment and inflation thresholds
- ' (lurtrsh, pitrsh) to values in the first four simulation quarters that ' would not flip the dmptr switch to one.
- ' 4. Choose one of the five available policy rules by setting
- ' %policy to one of rffintay, rfftay, rfftlr, rffalt, or rffgen.
- ' 5. If neither the ZLB or thresholds are imposed, the monetary policy

```
' equations have baseline-tracking adds and the simulation is
' a standard deviations-from-baseline exercise.
' 6. If either the ZLB or thresholds are imposed, the add factors on
' monetary policy equations are set to zero after the tracking adds
' are computed so that the ZLB and threshold conditions are based on the
' actual simulated outcomes for the funds rate and inflation and unemployment,
' not their deviations from baseline.
' Initial filename and parameter settings
' Subroutines
 include ../subs/master_library
' Workfile
 %wfstart = "1975q1"
 %wfend = "2012q4"
 %mainpage = "main"
 wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
' FRB/US model name and location
 %varmod = "stdver"
 %varpath = "../mods/"
' Input datbase
 %dbin = "../data/longbase"
' Simulation range
 %simstart = "2003q3"
 %simend = "2008q2"
' Policy
 %zb = "yes"
 %threshold = "yes"
 %policy = "rfftay"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' Load equations and coefficients
 ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
```

```
ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
, Load data
 dbopen %dbin as longbase
 fetch(d=longbase) *
' Set monetary policy rule
 smpl @all
 %policydmp = @replace(%policy,"rff","dmp")
 call set_mp(%policydmp)
, Set ZLB
 if %zb = "yes" then
   rffmin = .125
   else
   rffmin = -9999
   endif
' Set threshold variables
 if %threshold = "yes" then
   if %zb = "no" then
     @uiprompt("When policy thresholds are imposed, the zero bound must also be imposed,
     stop
     endif
   smpl @all
   call dateshift(%simstart,%quarter4,3)
  ' thresholds (dmptrsh and dmptr) not active in first 4 qtrs
   smpl %simstart - 1 %quarter4
   dmptrsh = 0
   lurtrsh = -9999
   pitrsh = 9999
   dmptr = 0
  ' thresholds (dmptrsh and dmptr) active starting in qtr 5
   smpl %quarter4 + 1 %simend
   dmptrsh = 1
   lurtrsh = 7.0
   pitrsh = 3.0
   smpl @all
   else
   smpl @all
   dmptrsh = 0
   endif
 smpl @all
 drstar = 0
```

```
' Set fiscal policy
 smpl @all
 call set_fp("dfpsrp")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart 2012q4
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
' Set monetary policy add factors to zero when ZLB or threshold are
' imposed
 if %zb = "yes" then
   smpl @all
   {\text{molicy}}_a = 0
   rffrule_a = 0
   rffe_a = 0
   if %threshold = "yes" then
     dmptpi_a = 0
     dmptlur_a = 0
     dmptmax_a = 0
     dmptr_a = 0
     endif
   endif
' Simulation
```

```
%sufsim = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
' shock values are taken from equation residuals for 2008q4-2009q3
 eco_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.006, -.006, -.011, -.001
 ecd_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.091, -.018, -.021, .029
 eh_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.076, -.078, -.040, .073
 epd_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.096, -.062, .014, .032
 eps_a.fill(o=%simstart) -.018, -.046, -.036, -.017
 rbbbp_a.fill(o=%simstart) 2.70, 0.38, -0.89, -1.35
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.solve
' Make a graph
smpl %simstart %simend
 graph fig1a.line rff rff{%sufsim}
 fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
 fig1a.legend -display
 graph fig1b.line rg10 rg10{%sufsim}
 fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
 fig1b.legend -display
 graph fig1c.line lur lur{%sufsim}
 fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
 fig1c.legend -display
 graph fig1d.line pic4 pic4{%sufsim}
 fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
 fig1d.legend -display
 %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Negative AD Shock\r(VAR Expectations"
 %title = %title + "; Policy = " + %policy + ")"
 if %zb = "yes" and %threshold = "no" then
   %title = %title + "\r(ZLB Imposed)"
   endif
 if %zb = "yes" and %threshold = "yes" then
   %title = %title + "\r(ZLB and Thresholds Imposed)"
   endif
```

```
graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) {%title}
fig1.addtext(b,just(c),font("Arial",16)) Blue: Actual; Red: Simulated
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
show fig1
```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg. Defines:

example3, used in chunk 10.

Uses dateshift 88, group2zero 90a, groupnew 91, ld_frbus_cfs 11a 11b, ld_frbus_eqs 12b 13, master_library 87, set_fp 93, and set_mp 94a.

A.13 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg

```
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example \textit{4.prg} \ \textit{42} \rangle \equiv
42
       ' This MCE example program illustrates:
       ' 1. how to use a monetary policy rule that is not one of the policy
         alternatives included in FRB/US;
       ' 2. how to add new MCE expectations variables;
       ' 3. how to drop one of the regular FRB/US equations as part of the process
          of loading the model
       ' Most of the code needed illustrate these issues is located between
       ' the "start of new code" and "end of new code" comments below
       ' The switch variables %mcvars_wp and %mcvars_all control whether
       ' the assumption of MC expectations extends beyond the financial
       , sector
       ' See the Simulation Basics document for information about
       ' this program
       ' Initial filename and parameter settings
       ' Subroutines
         include ../subs/master_library
         include ../subs/mce_solve_library
       ' Workfile
        %wfstart = "1975q1"
        %wfend = "2100q4"
         %mainpage = "main"
         wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
       ' FRB/US model names and locations
         %varmod = "stdver"
         %varpath = "../mods/"
         %mcemod = "pfver"
         %mcepath = "../mods/"
       ' Input datbase
         %dbin = "../data/longbase"
```

' Simulation range

```
%simstart = "2010q1"
   simend = "2069q4"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' Specify MC expectations variables
   %mcvars_wp = "no"
   %mcvars_all = "yes"
' MCE asset pricing
   %zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zpib5 zpic58 "
' MCE elsewhere
   if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
       %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
       endif
   if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
       %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
       %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxbi zxbs zyh zyhp zy
       endif
' Load equations and coefficients
' drop one of the FRB/US monetary policy rule equations (rffgen) so that it can be
' replaced below with an alternative rule
   %allbut = "rffgen"
   call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,path_f=%mcemod,
' Load data
   dbopen %dbin as longdata
   fetch(d=longdata) *
' start of new code (aside from the change above to mce_load_frbus and
                                          the change below to the call to set_mp)
\dot{} Code a first-difference interest rate rule as rffgen. The first-difference rule depends on
' the expected output gap three quarters ahead (zgap3) and on expected 4-qtr inflation three
' quarters ahead (zpic43). The name of each new expectation must start with a "z".
```

{\"varmod}.append rffgen-rffgen_aerr = rffe(-1) + .5*(zpic43-pitarg) + .5*(zgap3-zgap3(-4))

```
' Add the MCE definitions of zgap3 and zpic43 to the forward-looking model,
' noting that the MCE names of these variables must start with a "w" rather than a ":
 {\mcemod}.append wgap3-wgap3_aerr = xgap2(3)
 {%mcemod}.append wpic43-wpic43_aerr = picx4(3)
' Add expectations error equations to the MCE model
 {%mcemod}.append ezgap3 = zgap3-wgap3
 {\mcemod}.append ezpic43 = zpic43-wpic43
' Add to the backward-looking model simple equations for the new expectations variab.
' Technically, these equations should be the appropriate VAR expectations formulas,
' because in this program these expectations will always be MCE, the form of their
' backward-looking identities is not very important.
 {%varmod}.append zgap3-zgap3_aerr = .5*xgap2(-1)
 {\wormod}.append zpic43-zpic43\_aerr = .5*picx4(-1)+.5*ptr(-1)
' Add the new MCE variables to the %zvars string
 %zvars = %zvars + " zgap3 zpic43"
' Define baseline values of the new expectations variables
 smpl @all
 series zgap3 = xgap2(3)
 series zpic43 = picx4(3)
' Make sure that the baseline data for rffgen matches the baseline data for rffe
 rffgen = rffe
' end of new code
' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
 call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)
' Set monetary policy to use the first-difference policy rule (coded as rffgen)
 smpl @all
 call set_mp("dmpgen")
' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
 smpl @all
 dmptrsh = 0
 rffmin = -9999
 drstar = 0
' Set fiscal policy
```

```
smpl @all
 call set_fp("dfpsrp")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {\text{warmod}}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {\mbox{\em mcemod}}. solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
 {%mcemod}.addassign @all
 {%mcemod}.addinit(v=n) @all
' Simulate the effects of a one-percent consumption shock
%sufsim = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 {%mcemod}.scenario(n,a={%sufsim}) "sim"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 eco_a = eco_a + .01
 %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
 %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
 %simstr = "type=single"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
```

```
' Make a graph
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 series zero = 0
 series d_rff = rff{%sufsim} - rff
 series d_rg10 = rg10\{\%sufsim\} - rg10
 series d_lur = lur{%sufsim} - lur
 series d_pic4 = pic4{%sufsim} - pic4
 graph fig1a.line zero d_rff
 fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
 fig1a.legend -display
 graph fig1b.line zero d_rg10
 fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
 fig1b.legend -display
 graph fig1c.line zero d_lur
 fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
 fig1c.legend -display
 graph fig1d.line zero d_pic4
 fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
 fig1d.legend -display
 graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d
 %title = " Macroeconomic Effects of a Shock to Consumption\r"
 if %mcvars_wp = "no" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
   %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing)"
 if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
   %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in Asset Pricing and Price-Wage Setting)"
   endif
 if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
   %title = %title + "(MC Expectations in All Sectors)"
 fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) {%title}
 fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
 show fig1
```

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg. Defines:
example4, used in chunk 10.

Uses group2zero 90a, groupnew 91, make_frbus_mcevars 176, master_library 87, mce_load_frbus 172, mce_run 102, mce_solve_library 95 194, set_fp 93, and set_mp 94a.

A.14 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg

```
48
     \langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg \ 48 \rangle \equiv
       ' Routine to simulate how the SEP baseline forecast would change if
       ' policymakers commit to a path for the federal funds rate that is
       ' determined by optimal-control (OC) techniques to minimize a
       ' quadratic loss function.
       ' Detailed information on the mechanics of the OC algorithm and the
       ' various required and optional parameters that set up and guide its
       ' execution is available in the MCE Solve Users Guide in the
       ' documentation directory. Most relevant is the part of section 5
       ' that describes the "opt" simulation type as well as table 7.
       ' As specified below, the loss function penalizes equally weighted
       ' squared deviations of the unemployment rate from the natural rate,
       ' squared deviations of inflation from a 2 percent, and squared
       ' quarterly changes in the funds rate.
       ' In the SEP baseline, agents with model-consistent (MC) expectations
       ' are initially assumed to project that the funds rate will follow the
       ' baseline path and to set their baseline expectations
       ' accordingly. At the start of the optimal control simulation, however,
       ' these agents immediately and fully revise their expectations to be
       ' consistent with the revision to the funds rate path that occurs under
       ' optimal control -- that is, agents have rational expectations and
       ' announced policy actions are completely credible.
       ' The experiment can be run with the zero lower bound (ZLB) imposed
       ' (%zerobound = "yes") or not imposed (%zerobound = "no"). When
       ' the ZLB is imposed, a penalty term is added to the loss function.
       ' Initial filename and parameter settings
       ' Subroutines
         include ../subs/master_library
         include ../subs/mce_solve_library
       ' Workfile
         %wfstart = "1975q1"
         % wfend = "2100q4"
         %mainpage = "main"
         wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
```

```
' FRB/US model names and locations
 %varmod = "stdver"
 %varpath = "../mods/"
 %mcemod = "pfver"
 %mcepath = "../mods/"
' Input datbase
 %dbin = "../data/longbase"
' Simulation range
 %simstart = "2014q4"
 %simend = "2070q4"
' Primary loss function parameters: The value of the policy instrument
' is chosen optimally from %drvstart to %drvend (60 qtrs) to minimize
' the loss function from %evlstart to %evlend (80 qtrs). The three
' arguments of the period loss function are weighted by the the
' weight parameters and over time losses are discounted at the rate
' %discount
 %evlstart = %simstart
 %drvstart = %simstart
 call dateshift(%evlstart,%evlend,79)
 call dateshift(%drvstart, %drvend, 59)
 %discount = ".99"
 %u_weight = "1.0"
 %p_weight = "1.0"
 %r_{weight} = "1.0"
' Optionally impose the zero lower bound
 %zerobound = "yes"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' Specify MC expectations variables
 %mcvars_wp = "yes"
 %mcvars_all = "no"
' MCE asset pricing
 %zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zpib5 zpic58 "
' MCE elsewhere
 if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
```

```
%zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
    if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
         %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
         %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxnfbi zxn:
          endif
' Load equations and coefficients
    call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,
' Add a ugap equation
    {%varmod}.append ugap - ugap_aerr = lur - lurnat
' Load data
    dbopen %dbin as longdata
    fetch(d=longdata) *
' Define SEP-consistent ustar and ugap series; this step is needed because
' the baseline value of lurnat may not be fully SEP-consistent in the
' short-to-medium ruun
    smpl @all
    series ustar = lurnat
    smpl %simstart 2025q4
    ustar = 5.35
    smpl @all
    series ugap = lur-ustar
    series ugap_aerr = 0
' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
    call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)
' Set monetary policy option (the residual on the equation of
' the chosen option is the OC policy instrument)
    smpl @all
    call set_mp("dmptay")
' Initially turn off zero lower bound; if %zerobound = "yes", it will be
' imposed below by adding a penalty term to the loss function.
    smpl @all
    rffmin = -9999
' Turn off policy thresholds
    dmptrsh = 0
' Let the perceived equilibrium real interest rate vary
    drstar = 1
```

```
' Set fiscal policy so that it is exogenous for first 20 qtrs and then
' turns on debt targeting rule
 smpl %simstart %simstart + 19
 call set_fp("dfpex")
 smpl %simstart + 20 %simend
 call set_fp("dfpdbt")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{$\%$}}}} mcemod \}. solveopt (o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {\"varmod\}.scenario(n,a={\"suftrk\}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
 {%mcemod}.addassign @all
 {%mcemod}.addinit(v=n) @all
' optimal policy setup
' The policy instrument is a time varying constant in the equation
' for the selected policy rule
 group opt_instrus rfftay_aerr
' Loss function variables (unemployment gap, 4-qtr PCE inflation,
' and the first difference of the federal funds rate)
 group opt_targs ugap pic4 delrff
```

```
' The desired paths of the loss function variables are specified in
' series with "_t" suffix.
 smpl @all
 series ugap_t = 0
 series delrff_t = 0
 series pic4_t = 2.0
' The weights on the loss function arguments are specified in
' series with "_w" suffix.
 series ugap_w = @val(%u_weight)
 series pic4_w = @val(%p_weight)
 series delrff_w = @val(%r_weight)
 !discount = @val(%discount)
 smpl %simstart+1 %simend
 ugap_w = !discount * ugap_w(-1)
 pic4_w = !discount * pic4_w(-1)
 delrff_w = !discount * delrff_w(-1)
' Zero bound penalty function
 if %zerobound = "yes" then
   {%varmod}.append penalty - penalty_aerr = _
      @recode(rff<(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift), _</pre>
         3.0*((rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift)-rff), _
        0) _
    + @recode(rff<(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift), _
       .10*exp(10*(rff-(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift))), _
       .10*exp(-20*(rff-(rff_lo_bnd+rff_lo_shift))))
   smpl @all
   series rff_lo_bnd = .125
   series rff_lo_shift = .00
   series penalty = 0
   series penalty_aerr = 0
   series rffmin = -9999
   %penalty_weight = "10.0"
   opt_targs.add penalty
   smpl @all
   series penalty_a = 0
   series penalty_t = 0
   series penalty_w = @val(%penalty_weight)
   smpl %simstart+1 %simend
   penalty_w = !discount * penalty_w(-1)
   endif
```

```
' optimal policy simulation
%sufcontrol = "_1"
' In %simstr, the "type=opt" string designates a commitment-based
'OC simulation. The required "instrus" and "targs" keywords point to
' the groups containing the policy instrument(s) and target variables.
' FRB/US simulations of this type generally run much more quickly with
' the newton MCE algorithm than they do with gnewton.
 %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
 %algstr = "jinit=interp(4), meth=newton"
 %simstr = "type=opt,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
 %simstr = %simstr + ",scen,suf=" + %sufcontrol+ ",solveopt=%sopt"
 %simstr = %simstr + ",lend=" + %evlend + ",iend=" + %drvend + ",lmax=20"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
'When the ZLB is imposed, run the OC algorithm a second time,
' after adjusting the intercept of the penalty function,
' to hit ZLB more closely
 if %zerobound = "yes" then
   smpl if rff{%sufcontrol} <.2</pre>
   rff_lo_shift = .125 - rff{%sufcontrol}
   %modstr = ""
   %algstr = ""
   %simstr = "type=opt,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
   %simstr = %simstr + ",solveopt=%sopt"
   %simstr = %simstr + ",lend=" + %evlend + ",iend=" + %drvend + ",lmax=20"
   smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
' graph results
call dateshift(%simstart, %graphstart, -8)
 call dateshift(%simstart, %graphend, 32)
 smpl %graphstart %graphend
 graph fig1a.line rff{%sufcontrol} rff
 fig1a.options size(7,4.2)
 fig1a.legend display -inbox position(3.8,2.8) font("arial",15)
```

```
fig1a.datelabel format(yy)
fig1a.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1a.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1a.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1a.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1a.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1a.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) Federal Funds Rate
smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1b.line rg10{%sufcontrol} rg10
fig1b.options size(7,4.2)
fig1b.legend display -inbox position(3.8,2.8) font("arial",15)
fig1b.datelabel format(yy)
fig1b.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1b.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1b.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1b.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1b.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1b.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) 10-Year Treasury Yield
smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1c.line lur{%sufcontrol} lur
fig1c.options size(7,4.2)
fig1c.legend display -inbox position(3.9,0.3) font("arial",15)
fig1c.datelabel format(yy)
fig1c.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1c.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1c.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1c.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1c.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1c.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) Unemployment Rate
smpl %graphstart %graphend
graph fig1d.line pic4{%sufcontrol} pic4
fig1d.options size(7,4.2)
fig1d.legend display -inbox position(0.5,0.2) font("arial",15)
fig1d.datelabel format(yy)
fig1d.addtext(6.4,-.30,font("arial",13),keep) percent
fig1d.axis(left) font("arial",15)
fig1d.axis(bottom) font("arial",15)
fig1d.setelem(1) lcolor(red) legend("optimal control") lwidth(2)
fig1d.setelem(2) lcolor(black) legend("SEP-consistent baseline") lwidth(2)
fig1d.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",18)) PCE Inflation Rate (4-Quarter)
```

graph fig1.merge fig1a fig1b fig1c fig1d

Uses dateshift 88, group2zero 90a, groupnew 91, make_frbus_mcevars 176,

master_library 87, mce_load_frbus 172, mce_run 102, mce_solve_library 95 194,

Defines:

ocpolicy, used in chunk 10.

set_fp 93, and set_mp 94a.

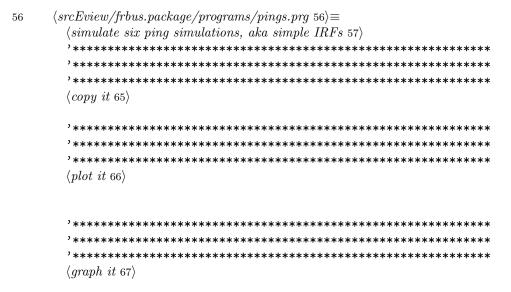
```
if %mcvars_wp = "no" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
  %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Optimal-Control Policy with Rational Expectations only if
  endif
if %mcvars_wp = "yes" and %mcvars_all = "no" then
  %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Optimal-Control Policy\n With Rational Expectationsin Firendif
if %mcvars_all = "yes" then
  %title = "Macroeconomic Effects of Optimal-Control Policy With Full Rational Expectations"
  endif

if %zerobound = "yes" then
  %title = %title + "\rZLB Imposed"
  else
  %title = %title + "\rZLB not Imposed"
  endif

fig1.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",20)) {%title}
fig1.align(2,1,1.25)
  show fig1

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg.
```

A.15 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg



This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg. Defines:

pings, used in chunks 10 and 57.

```
57
     \langle simulate \ six \ ping \ simulations, \ aka \ simple \ IRFs \ 57 \rangle \equiv
                                                                   (56)
        ' Simulate six ping simulations (AKA simple IRFs)
       , Notes:
       ' 1. Choose between VAR expectations and several MCE alternatives
       ' with the %mcevars parameter.
                                => VAR expectations everywhere
           - %mcevars = "none"
           - %mcevars = "mcap" => MCE in asset pricing, VAR expectations elsewhere
           - %mcevars = "mcapwp" => MCE in asset pricing and price-wage setting;
                VAR expectations elsewhere
           - %mcevars = "all"
                                 => MCE everywhere
       ' Note that even when %mcevars = "none", the program does many
       ' of the setup steps for an MCE simulation even though it never % \left( 1\right) =\left( 1\right) \left( 1\right) 
        ' uses what they create.
       ' 2. Seven of the pings are one-time shocks to the residual of an
        ' equation whose structure contains a large autoregressive
        ' element. The remaining ping involves a permanent increase in the
       ' level of trend MFP.
       ' 3. The eight pings are:
           - A 100 basis point upward shock to the rffintay monetary
             policy rule
           - An increase in federal purchases equal to one percent of
             baseline GDP
           - A one percent permanent increase in the level of trend MPF
           - A 100 bp increase in the equity premium
           - A $10 per barrel increase in the price of oil
           - A 1 percent (ar) increase in the growth rate of
            multifactor productivity
           - Increases of 100 basis points to the 10-year Treasury term premium,
             75 basis points to the 5-year premium, and 30 basis points to the
             30-year premium
           - A 10 percent increase in the (real) exchange rate
        ' Initial filename and parameter settings
       ' Subroutines
         include ../subs/master_library
         include ../subs/mce_solve_library
```

' Workfile

%wfstart = "1975q1"

dbopen %dbin as longdata

```
%wfend = "2100q4"
    %mainpage = "main"
    wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
' FRB/US model names and locations
    %varmod = "stdver"
    %varpath = "../mods/"
    %mcemod = "pfver"
    %mcepath = "../mods/"
' Input datbase
    %dbin = "../data/longbase"
' Simulation range
    %simstart = "2020q1"
    %simend = "2069q4"
'Choose an expectations option ("none" => VAR expectations, "mcap", "mcapwp", "all"
    %mcevars = "none"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' MCE variable setup
    if %mcevars = "none" then
         %zvars = "zpic58 "
         %zvars = "zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zgap30 zrff5 zrff10 zrff30 zpi10 zpi10f zpic30 zp.
          if %mcevars = "mcapwp" or %mcevars = "all" then
               %zvars = %zvars + "zpicxfe zpieci "
               endif
          if %mcevars = "all" then
               %zvars = %zvars + "zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvpi zvps zxbd zxbi zxb;
               endif
          endif
' Load equations and coefficients
    call mce_load_frbus("mce_vars=%zvars,mod_b=%varmod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%varpath,mod_f=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mcemod,path_b=%mc
' Load data
```

```
fetch(d=longdata) *
' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
 smpl @all
 call make_frbus_mcevars(%zvars)
' Set monetary policy
 smpl @all
 call set_mp("dmpintay")
' Turn off zero bound and policy thresholds; hold policymaker's
' perceived equilibrium real interest rate constant
 smpl @all
 dmptrsh = 0
 rffmin = -9999
 drstar = 0
' Set fiscal policy
 smpl @all
 call set_fp("dfpsrp")
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {%mcemod}.solveopt(o=b,g=12,z=1e-12)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
 {%mcemod}.addassign @all
 {%mcemod}.addinit(v=n) @all
```

```
' Ping simulations
%suf = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suf}) "ping"
 {%mcemod}.scenario(n,a={%suf}) "ping"
, ***********
' Federal Funds Rate: RFF ping
 %ping = "rff"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rffintay_aerr = rffintay_aerr + 1
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rffintay_aerr = rffintay_aerr - 1
 call copyit
<sup>,</sup> **************************
' Treasury Term Premium: RG10P, RG5P, and RG30P ping
 %ping = "prem"
 smpl @all
 series rg30p_aerr = 0
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rg10p_aerr = rg10p_aerr + 1
 rg5p_aerr = rg5p_aerr + .75
 rg30p_aerr = rg30p_aerr + .35
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
```

```
%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 rg10p_aerr = rg10p_aerr - 1
 rg5p_aerr = rg5p_aerr - 0.75
 rg30p_aerr = rg30p_aerr - .35
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series rg10p_{%ping} = rg10p{%suf} - rg10p
<sup>,</sup> **************************
' Federal Purchases: EGFO ping
 %ping = "eg"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 egfo_aerr = egfo_aerr + .01*xgdpn/egfon
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 egfo_aerr = egfo_aerr - .01*xgdpn/egfon
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series egfn_shr_{%ping} = 100*(egfn{%suf}/xgdpn{%suf} - egfn/xgdpn)
, ************
' Equity Premium: REQP ping
 %ping = "reqp"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 reqp_aerr = reqp_aerr + 1
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
```

```
%simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 reqp_aerr = reqp_aerr - 1
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series reqp_{%ping} = reqp{%suf} - reqp
<sup>,</sup> **************************
' Oil Prices: POILR ping
 %ping = "oil"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 poilr_aerr = poilr_aerr + 10/pxb
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 poilr_aerr = poilr_aerr - 10/pxb
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series poil_{%ping} = poil{%suf} - poil
, ********************
' Exchange Rate: FPXRR ping
 %ping = "exch"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 series shock_fpxr = log(1.1)
 fpxrr_aerr = fpxrr_aerr + shock_fpxr
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
```

June 19, 2016

if %mcevars = "none" then {%varmod}.solve

%algstr = "meth=qnewton"

else

```
frbuseview.nw
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 series fpxr_{%ping} = fpxr{%suf} - fpxr
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 fpxrr_aerr = fpxrr_aerr - shock_fpxr
 call copyit
, ***************************
' HMFPT ping
 %ping = "hmfp"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 hmfpt_aerr = hmfpt_aerr + 1
 smpl %simstart %simend
 if %mcevars = "none" then
   {%varmod}.solve
   else
   %modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"
   %algstr = "meth=qnewton"
   %simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf
   call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
   endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 hmfpt_aerr = hmfpt_aerr - 1
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series hmfpt_{%ping} = hmfpt{%suf} - hmfpt
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
' MFPT ping
 %ping = "mfp"
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 mfpt_aerr = mfpt_aerr + .01
 smpl %simstart %simend
```

%modstr = "mod_b=%varmod,mod_f=%mcemod,mce_vars=%zvars"

%simstr = "type=single,solveopt=%sopt,suf=" + %suf

63

```
call mce_run(%modstr,%algstr,%simstr)
  endif
 smpl %simstart %simstart
 mfpt_aerr = mfpt_aerr - .01
 call copyit
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series mfpt_{%ping} = 100*(mfpt{%suf}/mfpt - 1)
' Individual ping graphs
call graphit
' Composite figures
if %mcevars = "none" then
  %exp = "VAR Expectations"
  endif
 if %mcevars = "mcap" then
  %exp = "MC (MCAP) Expectations"
 if %mcevars = "mcapwp" then
  %exp = "MC (MCAP+WP) Expectations"
  endif
 if %mcevars = "all" then
  %exp = "MC (ALL) Expectations"
  endif
 \%t1 = "FRB/US Ping Simulations: " + \%exp + " -- I"
 %t2 = "FRB/US Ping Simulations: " + %exp + " -- II"
 %t3 = "FRB/US Ping Simulations: " + %exp + " -- III"
' Figure 1
 graph fig_1.merge gr_rff gr_eg gr_reqp
 fig_1.align(3,.4,1.0)
 fig_1.addtext(t,just(c),font(12)) %t1
 show fig_1
```

```
graph fig_2.merge gr_oil gr_hmfp gr_mfp
          fig_2.align(3,.4,1.0)
          fig_2.addtext(t,just(c),font(12)) %t2
          show fig_2
         'Figure 3
          graph fig_3.merge gr_prem gr_exch
          fig_3.align(3,.4,1.0)
          fig_3.addtext(t,just(c),font(12)) %t3
          show fig_3
      Uses copyit 65, graphit 67, group2zero 90a, groupnew 91, make_frbus_mcevars 176,
        master_library 87, mce_load_frbus 172, mce_run 102, mce_solve_library 95 194,
        pings 56, set_fp 93, and set_mp 94a.
      \langle copy \ it \ 65 \rangle \equiv
65
                                                                             (56)
          subroutine copyit
          smpl %simstart %simend
          series picnia_{%ping} = picnia{%suf} - picnia
          series pic4_{%ping} = pic4{%suf} - pic4
          series picx4_{%ping} = picx4{%suf} - picx4
          series picxfe_{%ping} = picxfe{%suf} - picxfe
          series xgap2_{%ping} = xgap2{%suf} -xgap2
          series lur_{%ping} = lur{%suf} - lur
          series rff_{%ping} = rff{%suf} - rff
          endsub
      Defines:
        copyit, used in chunk 57.
```

```
66
      \langle plot \ it \ 66 \rangle \equiv
                                                                           (56)
          subroutine plotit(string %grname, string %width, string %height, string %var1, str
          graph {%grname}.line {%var1} zero
          {%grname}.options size({%width},{%height}) -inbox
          {%grname}.setelem(1) linewidth(3) linepattern(1) linecolor(black)
          {%grname}.addtext(t,just(c),font(9)) %title
          {%grname}.addtext(0,-.15,font(8),just("r")) %units
          {%grname}.datelabel format(yyyy)
          {%grname}.legend -display
          {%grname}.axis(b) font(9)
          {%grname}.axis(1) font(9)
          endsub
      Defines:
        plotit, used in chunk 67.
```

```
67
      \langle graph \ it \ 67 \rangle \equiv
                                                                       (56)
          subroutine graphit
          smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
          series zero = 0
          delete(noerr) gr_*
        ' RFF ping
          %ping = "rff"
          %name = %ping + "a"
          %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Funds Rate"
          call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
          %name = %ping + "b"
          %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Funds Rate"
          call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
          %name = %ping + "c"
          %var1 = "rff_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Funds Rate\rto Funds Rate"
          call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
          graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
          gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
        ' EGFO ping
          %ping = "eg"
          %name = %ping + "a"
          %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Federal Purch"
          call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
          %name = %ping + "b"
          %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
          %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Federal Purch"
```

```
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "c"
 %var1 = "egfn_shr_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Federal Purch\rto Federal Purch"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent of GDP")
 graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
' REQP ping
 %ping = "reqp"
 %name = %ping + "a"
 %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Equity Premium"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "b"
 %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Equity Premium"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "c"
 var1 = "reqp_" + ping
 %tt = "Response of Equity Premium\rto Equity Premium"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
' POILR ping
 %ping = "oil"
 %name = %ping + "a"
 %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Oil Price"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "b"
 %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
```

```
%tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Oil Price"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "c"
 %var1 = "poil_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Oil Price\rto Oil Price"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"dollars per barrel")
 graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
' HMFPT ping
 %ping = "hmfp"
 %name = %ping + "a"
 %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto MFP Growth"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "b"
 %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto MFP Growth"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 %name = %ping + "c"
 %var1 = "hmfpt_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of MFP Growth\rto MFP Growth"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
 graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
' MFPT ping
 %ping = "mfp"
 %name = %ping + "a"
 %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto MFP Level"
 call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
```

```
%name = %ping + "b"
  %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
  %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto MFP Level"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
  %name = %ping + "c"
  %var1 = "mfpt_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of MFP Level\rto MFP Level"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent")
  graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
 gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
%ping = "prem"
  %name = %ping + "a"
  %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
  %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Term Premium"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
  %name = %ping + "b"
  %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
  %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Term Premium"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
  %name = %ping + "c"
  %var1 = "rg10p_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Term Premium (10-year) \rto Term Premium"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent")
  graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
  gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
%ping = "exch"
  %name = %ping + "a"
  %var1 = "xgap2_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Output Gap\rto Exchange Rate"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
  %name = %ping + "b"
  %var1 = "picxfe_" + %ping
 %tt = "Response of Core Inflation\rto Exchange Rate"
  call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percentage points")
```

```
%name = %ping + "c"
%var1 = "fpxr_" + %ping
%tt = "Response of Exchange Rate \rto Exchange Rate"
call plotit(%name,"2","1.5",%var1,%tt,"percent")

graph gr_{%ping}.merge {%ping}a {%ping}b {%ping}c
gr_{%ping}.align(3,.40,.40)
endsub

Defines:
    graphit, used in chunk 57.
Uses plotit 66.
```

A.16 srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg

71 $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg 71 \rangle \equiv \langle plot historical residuals of key equations 72 \rangle$

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg. Defines:

plot_resids, used in chunk 10.

```
72
    \langle plot\ historical\ residuals\ of\ key\ equations\ 72 \rangle \equiv
                                                        (71)
      ' Program to plot the historical residuals of key FRB/US equations
      ' Each residual has the same units of measurement as the
      ' the left hand side of its equation
      ' Initial filename and parameter settings
      ' Subroutines
        include ../subs/master_library
      ' Workfile
       %wfstart = "1975q1"
       %wfend = "2030q4"
        %mainpage = "main"
       wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
      ' FRB/US model name and location
       %varmod = "stdver"
       %varpath = "../mods/"
       %varinfo = "../mods/stdver_varinfo"
      ' Input datbase
        %dbin = "../data/longbase"
      ' Plot range
       %plotstart = "1980q1"
       %plotend = "2014q2"
      ' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients
      ' Load equations and coefficients
       ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
       ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
       ld_varinfo(pathname=%varinfo)
      ' Load data
       dbopen %dbin as longbase
        smpl %plotstart-12 %plotend
       fetch(d=longbase) *
```

```
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Compute baseline tracking add factors
 smpl %plotstart %plotend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
, Plots
%plotvars = "eco ecd eh epd epi eps ki ex emo lfpr lhp leo lww"
 %plotvars = %plotvars + " picxfe pieci pcer pcfr pcengr"
 %plotvars = %plotvars + " rg5p rg10p rg30p rbbbp rcar rme rtbe rcgain"
 %plotvars = %plotvars + " ynidn yniin yhibn"
 smpl %plotstart %plotend
 series zero = 0
 spool plot_vars
 !counter = 0
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%plotvars)
   %vname = @word(%plotvars,!i)
   call find_var_description
   !counter = !counter + 1
   graph gr_{%vname}.line zero {%vname}_a
   %title = %vname + ": " + %desc
   gr_{%vname}.addtext(t) %title
   gr_{%vname}.axis range(minmax)
   gr_{%vname}.options size(4,3)
   gr_{%vname}.legend -display
   plot_vars.append gr_{%vname}
   %index = "000" + @str(!counter)
   if !counter < 100 then
     %index = @right(%index,2)
     else
     %index = @right(%index,3)
     endif
   %name = "untitled" + %index
   plot_vars.name {%name} {%vname}
```

next

```
plot_vars.display
Uses find_var_description 74, group2zero 90a, groupnew 91, ld_frbus_cfs 11a 11b, ld_frbus_eqs 12b 13, ld_varinfo 26 27, and master_library 87.
```

This was originally written in Fortran! Look at the ii, jj, kk variable names. I had forgotten about that from when I briefly helped the programmer debug the original model some 45 years ago. Who would have expected nostalgia from something so prosaic. I never saw the original source code because I was working with only a hex dump.

```
\langle find \ variable \ description \ 74 \rangle \equiv
74
                                                                             (71)
          subroutine find_var_description
          for !j = 1 to 500
             %vline = vinfo_text.@line(!j)
             !eq = @instr(%vline,"=")
             !zz = !eq-4
             %name = @lower(@rtrim(@ltrim(@mid(%vline,4,!zz))))
             if %vname = %name then
               %desc = " "
               !ii = !eq + 1
               !kk = @instr(%vline, "sector_")
               if !kk = 0 then
                 !kk = @instr(%vline,"X.")
                 !jj = !kk - 1 - !ii
                 else
                 !jj = !kk - 7 - !ii
               %desc = @rtrim(@mid(%vline,!ii,!jj))
               exitloop
               endif
             next
           endsub
      Defines:
        find_var_description, used in chunk 72.
```

${\bf A.17} \quad {\bf srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg}$

75	$\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg 75 \rangle \equiv \langle stochastic simulations under variable expectations 76 \rangle$		
	[,] ************************************		
	'Subroutines		
	[,] ************************************		
	[,] ************************************		
	$\langle form\ table\ 85 angle$		
	[,] ************************************		
	[,] ************************************		
	$\langle make\ statistics\ 86 \rangle$		
	This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg.		

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.pefines:

 ${\tt stochsim}, \ used \ in \ chunk \ 10.$

76 $\langle stochastic \ simulations \ under \ variable \ expectations \ 76 \rangle \equiv$ (75)' Program for stochastic sims under VAR expectations ' The stochastic shocks are bootstrapped from the de-meaned ' historical errors of stochastic equations. The parameters ' %residstart and %residend declare the historical error range. ' A list of stochastic equations is extracted from the file ' pointed to by %varinfo. ' The bootstrap procedure randomly draws one historical quarter ' at a time when the parameter %errorblock = 1; alternatively, if ' %errorblock = 2, then the procedure would randomly draw two ' successive quarters at a time. ' The stochastic replications are simulated in a simple loop, ' rather than using the built-in EViews stochastic simulation ' procedure, so that shocks in the first simulation quarter can ' be scaled down by the parameter %q1_shock_damp. This feature ' is useful when uncertainty about the first simulation quarter ' in real-time analysis by known information. The shocks are ' not rescaled when %q1_shock_damp = 1. ' Similarly, the parameter %rff_weight_q1 is also designed to be ' used in real-time analysis when the first simulation quarter ' corresponds to a quarter that is already under way. The ' parameter provides the fractional value to be given to the ' monetary policy rule; the remaining fractional value is given to ' an exogenous value. ' The document Simulation Basics discusses the effects of ' imposing the zero lower bound (ZLB) on the federal funds rate ' (%zerobound parameter) and imposing threshold conditions ' on the liftoff of the funds rate from a ZLB episode ' (%threshold parameter). ' Initial filename and parameter settings

'Subroutines include ../subs/master_library

' Workfile
 %wfstart = "1965q1"
 %wfend = "2020q4"
 %mainpage = "main"

```
wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
' FRB/US model name and location
 %varmod = "stdver"
 %varpath = "../mods/"
 %varinfo = "../mods/stdver_varinfo"
' Input database
 %dbin = "../data/longbase"
' Simulation range
 %simstart = "2014q1"
 %simend = "2018q4"
' Stochastic parameters
 rndseed 12345
 %errorblock = "1"
 %residstart = "1970q1"
 %residend = "2012q4"
          = "1000"
 %nsims
 %q1_shock_damp = ".5"
 %dbout_series = "rff lur picxfe picnia picx4 xgap2 hggdp anngr"
' Monetary policy
 %zerobound = "yes"
 %threshold = "yes"
 \frak{rff_weight_q1} = ".25"
' Retrieve data, model equations and coefficients, set
' policy options, and compute tracking residuals
' Load equations, coefficients, and variable information
 ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
 ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%varmod,modelpath=%varpath)
 ld_varinfo(pathname=%varinfo)
' add 4-qtr gdp growth equation
 {%varmod}.append anngr - anngr_aerr = 100*((xgdp/xgdp(-4))-1)
' Load data
 dbopen %dbin as longbase
 fetch(d=longbase) *
 smpl @all
 series anngr = 100*((xgdp/xgdp(-4))-1)
```

```
' Set monetary policy to inertial Taylor rule (dmpintay, rffintay)
 smpl @all
 call set_mp("dmpintay")
 if %zerobound = "yes" then
   rffmin = .250
   else
   rffmin = -9999
   endif
 if %threshold = "yes" and %zerobound = "no" then
   %err = "Error: policy threshold conditions can only be used when the ZLB is impor-
   @uiprompt(%err)
   stop
   endif
 if %threshold = "yes" and %zerobound = "yes" then
   dmptrsh = 1
   dmptr = 0
   else
   dmptrsh = 0
   endif
 drstar = 0
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 dmpintay = @val(%rff_weight_q1)
 dmpex = 1 - dmpintay
' Set fiscal policy
 smpl @all
 call set_fp("dfpex")
 dmpstb = 1
' Set _aerr variables to zero
 smpl @all
 {%varmod}.makegroup(a,n) endog @endog
 call groupnew("endog","_aerr")
 call group2zero("endog_aerr")
' Standard solution options
 {%varmod}.solveopt(o=b,g=14,z=1e-14)
' Assign baseline tracking add factors
 %suftrk = "_0"
 smpl %residstart %simend
 {%varmod}.addassign @all
 {%varmod}.addinit(v=n) @all
```

```
{%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%suftrk}) "track"
 {%varmod}.solve
 scalar mm = @max(@abs(xgap{%suftrk}-xgap))
 if mm > .0001 then
   statusline dynamic tracking simulation failed for {%varmod}
   stop
   endif
' More monetary policy settings
' if policy thresholds are turned on, set add factors on endogenous
' threshold switch variables to zero
 if %threshold = "yes" then
   smpl @all
   dmptpi_a = 0
   dmptlur_a = 0
   dmptmax_a = 0
   dmptr_a = 0
   endif
' if the zero bound is binding in part or all of the baseline, the
' adds (_a) on the policy rule and the funds rate equations are
' determined so as to satisfy the following conditions.
' a. the stochastic funds rate equals the maximum of the zero bound and
     the prediction of the chosen policy rule (this simply requires that
     rffe_a and rffe_aerr be zero)
'b. the prediction of the chosen policy rule is subject to _a add factors
     that are determined as follows:
     (1) in quarters when the zero bound is not binding in the baseline,
         the associated add factors equal the values that make
         the policy rule equation match the baseline funds rate under
         baseline conditions (this is satisfied by the tracking adds on
         the policy rule as long as the baseline value of the policy rule
         variable equals the baseline funds rate);
     (2) in quarters when the zero bound is binding in the baseline,
         the associated add factors are determined by linear interpolation
         of the add factors generated according to b(1) for the
         unbound quarters;
     (3) when the zero bound is binding in all baseline quarters, the
         policy rule add factors are zero;
     (4) the zero bound is assumed to be binding in the baseline whenever
         the baseline funds rate (rffe) is within 25 basis points of the
```

```
zero bound variable (rffmin).
 smpl %simstart %simend
 series not_constrnd = ((rffe - rffmin) >= .25)
 !tmp_max = @max(not_constrnd)
 !tmp_min = @min(not_constrnd)
' zero bound binding in some quarters
 if (!tmp_max = 1) and (!tmp_min = 0) then
   smpl %simstart %simend
   rffe_a = 0
   rffe_aerr = 0
   rffintay_aerr = 0
   smpl %simstart %simend if (not_constrnd = 0)
   rffintay_a = NA
   %series_in = "rffintay_a"
   %series_out = %series_in + "_int"
   call interp_lin(%series_in,%series_out,%simstart,%simend)
   rffintay_a = {%series_out}
   endif
' zero bound binding in all quarters
 if (!tmp_max = 0) and (!tmp_min = 0) then
   smpl %simstart %simend
   rffe_a = 0
   rffe_aerr = 0
   rffintay_aerr = 0
   rffintay_a = 0
   endif
' Stochastic shocks
' copy historical residuals into series whose names have _err suffixes
 smpl %residstart %residend
 copy *_a *_err
' use vinfo table to create list/group of equations to receive shocks
 %tmp = " "
 for !i = 1 to vinfo_size
   %vname = @word(vinfo_vname,!i)
   %stoch = @word(vinfo_stoch,!i)
   if %stoch <> "NO" then
    %tmp = %tmp + " " + %vname
     endif
```

```
next
 group shock {%tmp}
' demean historical residuals and store them in a matrix
 smpl %residstart %residend
 %error_names = " "
 for !i = 1 to shock.@count
   %temp = shock.@seriesname(!i) + "_err"
   scalar mm = @mean({%temp})
     series \{\%temp\} = \{\%temp\} - mm
     %error_names = %error_names + " " + %temp
     next
 group errors {%error_names}
 smpl %residstart %residend
 stom(errors,errormat)
' create table of error statistics
 !nrows = 3 + errors.@count
 !ncols = 3
 table(!nrows,!ncols) error_tab
 error_tab.setjust(r1c1:r{!nrows}c1) left
 error_tab.setwidth(1) 20
 error_tab(1,1) = "error"
 error_tab(1,2) = "mean"
 error_tab(1,3) = "std-dev"
 smpl %residstart %residend
 for !i = 1 to errors.@count
   series tseries = errors(!i)
   error_tab(!i+3,1) = errors.@seriesname(!i)
   error_tab(!i+3,2) = @mean(tseries)
   error_tab(!i+3,3) = @stdev(tseries)
   next
' miscellaneous
 smpl %simstart %simend
 scalar nqtrs = @obssmpl
 scalar nrepl = {%nsims}
 scalar nsims = {%nsims}
 scalar nerrors = @rows(errormat)
 scalar bbbb = nqtrs-nerrors
 call groupnew("shock","_aerr")
```

```
group track {%dbout_series}
 call groupnames2string("track",%tracknames)
' for tracked variables, set up matrices to hold stochastic results
 for !i = 1 to track.@count
  %temp = track.@seriesname(!i)
  matrix(nqtrs,nrepl) {%temp}_mat
  next
' Stochastic sims
%sufstoch = "_1"
 {%varmod}.scenario(n,a={%sufstoch}) "stoch sims"
' stochastic simulation loop (sims are run one at a time)
 smpl %simstart %simend
 for !i = 1 to nrepl
  statusline running stochastic sim number !i
 ' draw nqtrs random rows from the matrix of historical errors,
 ' damp the shocks in the first drawn row, and load the shocks
 ' into the respective _aerr error series
  matrix stocherrors = @resample(errormat,bbbb,{%errorblock})
  for !j = 1 to @columns(stocherrors)
    stocherrors(1,!j) = @val(%q1_shock_damp) * stocherrors(1,!j)
    next
  mtos(stocherrors,shock_aerr)
   {%varmod}.solve
 ' store solution values
   for !j = 1 to track.@count
    %temp = track.@seriesname(!j)
    %temp1 = %temp + "_mat"
    stom({%temp}{%sufstoch},tmp)
    colplace({%temp1},tmp,!i)
    next
  next
' Statistics
```

```
statusline computing statistics
 smpl %simstart %simend
 !index = 2
 series year = @year
 series quarter = @quarter
 alpha yyyyqq = @str(year) + "Q" + @str(quarter)
 !lqtr = @dtoo(%simstart) - 1
 !nstats = 8
'create a summary table in which to store key results
 call tableform("summary_tab","100")
' loop over each tracked variable,
 for !ii1 = 1 to track.@count
   %trkname = track.@seriesname(!ii1)
 ' compute statistics
   call makestats(%trkname)
  ' load statistics into variable-specific table
   %tabname = %trkname + "_tab"
   call tableform(%tabname,@str(nqtrs+2))
   for !ii2 = 1 to nqtrs
     {%trkname}_tab(!ii2+2,1) = yyyyqq(!lqtr + !ii2)
     for !ii3 = 1 to !nstats
       {\psi trkname}_tab(!ii2+2,!ii3+1) = {\psi trkname}_stats(!ii2,!ii3)
       next
     next
  ' load statistics for each q4 observation into summary table
   !index = !index + 1
   summary_tab(!index,1) = %trkname
   !index = !index + 1
   for !ii2 = 1 to nqtrs
     if quarter(!lqtr+!ii2) = 4 then
       for !ii3 = 1 to !nstats + 1
         summary_tab(!index,!ii3) = {%trkname}_tab(!ii2+2,!ii3)
         next
        !index = !index + 1
       endif
     next
  ' make graph showing 70 and 90 percent bands
   graph {%trkname}_graph.band {%trkname}_lo90 {%trkname}_hi90 {%trkname}_lo70 _
       {%trkname}_hi70 {%trkname}_base
```

```
{%trkname}_graph.addtext(t) %trkname
   {%trkname}_graph.options size(6,4.5)
 next
, *****************************
' summary graph
 lur_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Unemployment Rate
 rff_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) Federal Funds Rate
 picx4_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 4-qtr Core Inflation Rate
 anngr_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("arial",12)) 4-qtr Real GDP Growth Rate
 lur_graph.legend -display
 rff_graph.legend -display
 picx4_graph.legend -display
 anngr_graph.legend -display
 \verb|graph summary_graph.merge lur_graph rff_graph picx4_graph anngr_graph|
 summary_graph.legend -display
 summary_graph.addtext(t,just(c),font("Arial",16)) Stochastic Simulations\r(70 and 9
 show summary_graph
, *************
' summary spool
```

'summary spool
spool results
summary_tab.deleterow(!index) 100
results.append summary_tab
results.append summary_graph
results.append error_tab
results.display

Uses group2zero 90a, groupnames2string 90b, groupnew 91, interp_lin 92, ld_frbus_cfs 11a 11b, ld_frbus_eqs 12b 13, ld_varinfo 26 27, makestats 86, master_library 87, set_fp 93, set_mp 94a, and tableform 85.

June 19, 2016 85 frbuseview.nw 85 $\langle form\ table\ 85 \rangle \equiv$ (75)subroutine tableform(string %tabname, string %nrows) table(@val(%nrows),9) {%tabname} {%tabname}.setwidth(1:9) 8 {%tabname}.setjust(r1c1:r{%nrows}c9) right {%tabname}.setformat(r2c2:r{%nrows}c9) f.3 {%tabname}(1,1) = "qtr" {%tabname}(1,2) = "baseline" ${\text{tabname}}(1,3) = \text{"mean"}$ ${\text{tabname}}(1,4) = \text{"median"}$ ${\text{tabname}}(1,5) = "stdev"$ ${\text{tabname}}(1,6) = "90\%-low"$

endsub

Defines:

tableform, used in chunk 76.

{%tabname}(1,7) = "90%-hi" {%tabname}(1,8) = "70%-low" {%tabname}(1,9) = "70%-hi"

```
86
      \langle make\ statistics\ 86 \rangle \equiv
                                                                         (75)
        subroutine makestats(string %trkname)
          %trkmat = %trkname + "_mat"
          %statsmat = %trkname + "_stats"
          matrix(nqtrs,8) {%statsmat}
          smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
        ' loop over each simulation quarter
          for !ii2 = 1 to ngtrs
          ' put simulation replications for this quarter into matrix tempm1
            matrix tempm1 = @sort(@rowextract({%trkmat},!ii2))
            {\statsmat}(!ii2,1) = {\strkname}(!lqtr + !ii2)
            {%statsmat}(!ii2,2) = @mean(tempm1)
            {\text{statsmat}}(!ii2,3) = tempm1(1,@floor(.50*nrepl))
            {%statsmat}(!ii2,4) = @stdev(tempm1)
            {\statsmat}(!ii2,5) = tempm1(1,@floor(.05*nrepl))
            {\statsmat}(!ii2,6) = tempm1(1,@floor(.95*nrepl))
            {\statsmat}(!ii2,7) = tempm1(1,@floor(.15*nrepl))
            {\%statsmat}(!ii2,8) = tempm1(1,@floor(.85*nrepl))
            next
        ' also create individual series for each statistic
          series {%trkname}_base = 0
          series {%trkname}_mn = 0
          series {%trkname}_med = 0
          series {%trkname}_se = 0
          series {\frac{\text{mone}}{1090} = 0}
          series {%trkname}_hi90 = 0
          series {\text{trkname}}_{1070} = 0
          series {%trkname}_hi70 = 0
          group {%trkname}_group {%trkname}_base {%trkname}_mn {%trkname}_med _
                {%trkname}_se {%trkname}_lo90 {%trkname}_hi90 {%trkname}_lo70 _
                {%trkname}_hi70
          mtos({%statsmat},{%trkname}_group)
          endsub
      Defines:
        makestats, used in chunk 76.
```

A.18 srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg

87	$\langle srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg\ 87 \rangle \equiv $

	[,] ************************************
	$\langle quarterly \ date \ string \ shift \ 88 \rangle$
	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	$\langle copy \ series \ into \ group \ 89 \rangle$
	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	$\langle set\ group\ to\ zero\ 90a angle$
	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	$\langle names\ of\ all\ series\ in\ group\ 90b \rangle$
	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************

	\(\lambda\) create new group 91\(\rangle\) ***********************************
	, ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	$\langle interpolate\ unavailable\ observations\ 92 \rangle$

	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	$\langle set\ fiscal\ policy\ option\ 93 \rangle$
	, ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	$\langle set \ monetary \ policy \ option \ 94a \rangle$

	[,] ************************************
	[,] ************************************
	$\langle set \ monetary \ policy \ fed \ funds \ rate \ 94b angle$

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg. Defines:

 ${\tt master_library}, \ used \ in \ chunks \ 10, \ 29, \ 32, \ 36, \ 42, \ 48, \ 57, \ 72, \ and \ 76.$

```
89
      \langle copy \ series \ into \ group \ 89 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (87)
        subroutine group2group(string %fromgroup, string %togroup, string %to_type)
        ' copies a group of series into another group.
        ' If %to_type = "suffix", then %togroup is interpreted as a suffix to be applied to
        ' %fromgroup and its series.
        ' If %to_type = "prefix", then %togroup is interpreted as a prefix to be applied to
        ' %fromgroup and its series.
        ' If %to_type = "group", the %togroup is interpreted as the name of a group that
        ' already exists.
          if %to_type = "group" then
            if {%fromgroup}.@count <> {%togroup}.@count then
              statusline ERROR in GROUP2GROUP: the two groups do not contain the same number of series
            for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
              %tmp = {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1)
              %tmp1 = {%togroup}.@seriesname(!ik1)
              {\text{mp1}} = {\text{mp}}
              next
            endif
          if %to_type = "suffix" then
            %tmpa = " "
            %tmpb = %fromgroup + %togroup
            for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
              %tmp = {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1) + %togroup
              %tmpa = %tmpa + " " + %tmp
              if @isobject(%tmp) then
                {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
                series {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
                endif
              next
            group {%tmpb} {%tmpa}
            endif
          if %to_type = "prefix" then
            %tmpa = " "
            %tmpb = %togroup + %fromgroup
            for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
              %tmp = %togroup + {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1)
```

%tmpa = %tmpa + " " + %tmp

```
if @isobject(%tmp) then
                   {\text{tmp}} = {\text{mongroup}}(!ik1)
                   series {%tmp} = {%fromgroup}(!ik1)
                   endif
                 next
               group {%tmpb} {%tmpa}
               endif
          endsub
       Defines:
          group2group, never used.
        ⟨set group to zero 90a⟩≡
90a
                                                                                 (87)
          subroutine group2zero(string %group)
          ' set all series in an existin %group to zero
            for !ik1 = 1 to {%group}.@count
              %tmp = {%group}.@seriesname(!ik1)
              {\text{\{\%tmp\}}} = 0
              next
          endsub
       Defines:
          group2zero, used in chunks 29, 32, 36, 42, 48, 57, 72, and 76.
90b
        \langle names \ of \ all \ series \ in \ group \ 90b \rangle \equiv
                                                                                  (87)
          subroutine groupnames2string(string %group, string %groupnames)
          ' creates a string of the names of all the series in a group
            %groupnames = " "
            for !ik1 = 1 to {%group}.@count
              %groupnames = %groupnames + " " + {%group}.@seriesname(!ik1)
              next
          endsub
       Defines:
          groupnames2string, used in chunk 76.
```

```
91
      \langle create \ new \ group \ 91 \rangle \equiv
                                                                            (87)
        subroutine groupnew(string %fromgroup, string %to)
        ' Creates a new group. The names of the new group and associated series are built up
        ' from %fromgroup with %to as a suffix. Series that do not yet exist are set to zero.
          %tmpa = " "
          %tmpb = %fromgroup + %to
          for !ik1 = 1 to {%fromgroup}.@count
            %tmp = {%fromgroup}.@seriesname(!ik1) + %to
            %tmpa = %tmpa + " " + %tmp
             if @isobject(%tmp) <> 1 then
               series \{\%tmp\} = 0
               endif
            next
          group {%tmpb} {%tmpa}
        endsub
      Defines:
        groupnew, used in chunks 29, 32, 36, 42, 48, 57, 72, and 76.
```

```
92
      \langle interpolate\ unavailable\ observations\ 92 \rangle \equiv
                                                                    (87)
       subroutine interp_lin(string %series_in, string %series_out, string %substart, string
       ' Subroutine that replaces NA values in a series with
       ' interpolated observations. NA values at the beginning or end of the series are
       ' replaced with the first or last non-NA value.
         smpl %substart %subend
         ' check that series is not all NAs
         series tmp_check = ({%series_in} = NA)
         if @sum(tmp_check) = @obssmpl then
           statusline Error in interp_lin subroutine: interpolation cannot be performed be-
           stop
           endif
         series tmp_ser = ({%series_in}<>NA)
         series tmp_id = @cumsum(tmp_ser)
         series tmp_next = @sumsby({%series_in},tmp_id(-1))
         series tmp_prev = @sumsby({%series_in},tmp_id)
         ' check for NAs at either beginning or end of sample
         ' test for NAs at beginning of sample
         series tmp_naprev = (tmp_prev = NA)
         !flag_prev = @max(tmp_naprev)
         if !flag_prev = 1 then
           'at this point, tmp_next will have an undesired NA in its first observation;
           'change it to equal its second observation
           smpl %substart %substart
           call dateshift(%substart, %nextqtr,1)
           tmp_next = @elem(tmp_next, %nextqtr)
           smpl %substart %subend if (tmp_prev = NA)
           tmp_prev = tmp_next
           smpl %substart %subend
           endif
         ' test for NAs at end of sample
         series tmp_nanext = (tmp_next = NA)
         !flag_next = @max(tmp_nanext)
         if !flag_next = 1 then
           smpl %substart %subend if (tmp_next = NA)
           tmp_next = tmp_prev
```

smpl %substart %subend

endif

```
series tmp_lambda = (@obsid-@minsby(@obsid,tmp_id))/@sumsby(1,tmp_id)
    series {%series_out} = tmp_lambda*tmp_next + (1-tmp_lambda)*tmp_prev
    delete tmp_ser tmp_prev tmp_next tmp_lambda tmp_id tmp_nanext tmp_naprev tmp_check
  endsub
Defines:
 interp_lin, used in chunk 76.
Uses dateshift 88.
\langle set \ fiscal \ policy \ option \ 93 \rangle \equiv
                                                                 (87)
  subroutine set_fp(string dfpxxx)
    %policy_options = "dfpex dfpsrp dfpdbt"
    %dfpxxx = @lower(dfpxxx)
    %dfpxxx = @replace(%dfpxxx," ","")
    !kz = @wfind(%policy_options,%dfpxxx)
    if !kz > 0 then
     for !izzz = 1 to @wcount(%policy_options)
        %ppp = @word(%policy_options,!izzz)
        if !izzz = !kz then
          series {%ppp} = 1
          else
          series \{\%ppp\} = 0
          endif
        next
      %err = %dfpxxx + " is not a valid fiscal policy option; execution terminated"
      @uiprompt(%err)
      stop
      endif
 endsub
Defines:
 set_fp, used in chunks 29, 32, 36, 42, 48, 57, and 76.
```

```
94a
       \langle set\ monetary\ policy\ option\ 94a \rangle \equiv
                                                                              (87)
         subroutine set_mp(string dmpxxx)
           %policy_options = "dmpex dmprr dmptay dmptlr dmpintay dmpalt dmpgen"
           %dmpxxx = @lower(dmpxxx)
           %dmpxxx = @replace(%dmpxxx," ","")
            !kz = @wfind(%policy_options,%dmpxxx)
           if !kz > 0 then
             for !izzz = 1 to @wcount(%policy_options)
                %ppp = @word(%policy_options,!izzz)
                if !izzz = !kz then
                  series {\%ppp} = 1
                  else
                  series \{\%ppp\} = 0
                  endif
                next
              else
              %err = %dmpxxx + " is not a valid monetary policy option; execution terminated"
              @uiprompt(%err)
              stop
              endif
         endsub
       Defines:
         set_mp, used in chunks 29, 32, 36, 42, 48, 57, and 76.
94b
       ⟨set monetary policy fed funds rate 94b⟩≡
                                                                             (87)
         subroutine set_mpvars2rff
           rfffix = rff
           rfftay = rffe
           rfftlr = rffe
           rffalt = rff
           rffintay = rffe
           rffgen = rffe
           rrfix = rffe - @movav(picxfe,4)
         endsub
       Defines:
         set_mpvars2rff, never used.
```

A.19 srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg

 $\langle srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg 95 \rangle \equiv \langle mce \ solve \ library \ 96 \rangle$

95

This code is written to file srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg. Defines:

mce_solve_library, used in chunks 10, 32, 42, 48, 57, 178, 181, 184, 188, and 191.

96	$\langle mce\ solve\ library\ 96 \rangle \equiv$	(95 194)
	$\langle mce\ solve\ library\ change\ history\ 100 \rangle$	
	, ********************************	************
	, ********************************	********
	**************	******
	$\langle run \ model \ consistent \ expectations \ 102 \rangle$	
	[,] ************************************	*********
	[,] ************************************	********
	[,] ************************************	********
	$\langle determine\ endogenous\ and\ exogenous\ variables\ 109 angle$	
	' ************************************	**************************************
	' ************************************	*****
	, *************************************	*****
	, ********************************	*****
	, *******************************	*****
	$\langle parse\ options\ not\ containing\ equal\ signs\ 116b \rangle$	
	, ************************************	
	, ************************************	

	$\langle create\ common\ variables,\ strings,\ matrices,\ vectors,\ and$	
	, ********************************	*************
	, ********************************	
	****************	******
	$\langle model\ consistent\ coefficient\ simulation\ 119 \rangle$	

[,] ************************************
[,] ************************************
[,] ************************************
$\langle solve\ model\ consistent\ instrument\ values\ 128 \rangle$
[,] ************************************
[,] ************************************
[,] ************************************
$\langle compute\ derivatives\ of\ mce\ targets\ wrt\ mce\ instruments\ 130 \rangle$
[,] ************************************
[,] ************************************
[,] ************************************
$\langle model\ consistent\ coefficient\ non-monotone\ step-length\ procedure\ 136 \rangle$

[,] ************************************
[,] ************************************
$\langle model\ consistent\ armijo\ optimization\ rule\ 137 \rangle$

'************************************
[,] ************************************

$\langle set\ options\ based\ on\ defaults\ and\ overrides\ 140 \rangle$
[,] ************************************
[,] ************************************
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~

$\langle main\ unconstrained\ optimal\ control\ simulation\ 147 \rangle$
, ************************************
, ************************************
'************************************
, ************************************
`************************************
,************************************
'*************************************

,	******************	
,	*******************	;
,	*******************	
$\langle l \rangle$	oad frbus with transformed subsidiary model 172 $\rangle$	
`		
,	******************	;
,	******************	;
,	******************	
( α	reate wage and expectation variables in forward looking model 176	

```
100
      \langle mce \ solve \ library \ change \ history \ 100 \rangle \equiv
                                                                       (96)
        ' Changes (1/25/14)
        ' 1. Removed defaults from mce_load_frbus subroutine
        ' 2. Added make_frbus_mcevars subroutine
        ' Changes (1/22/14)
        ' 1. Added code so that the _$_sufsim string variable is assigned the
              alias of the currently active scenario when the %mopts argument
              is a null string.
        ' 2. In subroutine mcz_sim, put the contents of string variable
              mcz_sim_options into another string, a change which for unknown
              reasons eliminates an unexplanined Eviews shutdown when running
              a pair of simulations of which the first is type=single and the
              second is type=opt.
        ' Changes (1/8/14)
        ' 1. Added the "dontstop" option to the "sopt argument. When invoked,
              this option causes the eviews program that calls mce_run
              to continue executing when running a type=single simulation if
              (a) the solution iterations do not
              converge within the maximum number of permitted iterations or
              (b) the eviews solver generates an error when solving either
              the backward-looking or forward-looking models in subroutine
              mcz_solvit. In the case of nonconvergence the call to mce_run
              terminates with the string value %mce_finish = "no". In the
              case of a solver error, the call to mce_run terminates with the
              string value %mce_finish = "failed_solve". Otherwise,
              %mce_finish = "yes".
        ' Changes (2/21/12)
        ' 1. Fixed problem with code for unconstrained TC policy
             calculated via EViews matrices -- the solution at period t
             (t = 1, ... !ndrv) must go out through period
             the farthest period ever solved -- (!nevl + !ndrv - 1) --
             which requires that the opt derivative
             matrix must span this many quarters. The constrained TC
        ' 2. Wrote code for constrained TC policy in EViews when there is
             a single instrument
```

```
' 3. Fixed code for constrained TC policy in R \operatorname{\mathsf{--}} still need to do matlab
' Changes (2/16/12)
' 1. Fixed problem with constrained optimization when
     number of evaluation periods is not the same as
     the number of instrument periods
     (subroutine mcz_opt_qp). This undoes part of the
     1/17/12 change #3
' Changes (2/13/12)
' 1. Added "d=" option for TC damping factor (!tcdamp)
' Changes (1/30/12)
' 1. Modified subroutine mca_opt_qp to set options in matlab
     quadprog function call
' Changes (1/17/12)
' 1. Added new subroutine (mcz_opt_tc) and new simtype (opttc)
' 2. Added new keywords: ideriv, for sopt string
                 /xopen, /xclose for R and matlab
' 3. Modified subroutine mcz_opt_qp so that the dimensions of the
     initial and transformed constraint matrices are based on !ndrv not !nevl
' 4. Dropped the explicit optqp simtype
```

Uses make_frbus_mcevars 176, mce_load_frbus 172, mce_run 102, mcz_opt_qp 151, mcz_opt_tc 156, mcz_sim 119, and mcz_solvit 128.

```
102
      \langle run \ model \ consistent \ expectations \ 102 \rangle \equiv
                                                                    (96)
          subroutine mce_run(string m_opts, string a_opts, string s_opts)
        ' Driver program
          %mcestart = @word(@pagesmpl,1)
          %mceend = @word(@pagesmpl,2)
        ' 1. Examine m_opts string (defines or creates models, mce errors and instruments)
        ' Case 1: null string (ie, "")
                  => use existing models whose names are contained in %_$_mod_b and
                    %_$_mod_f; use existing objects _$_mce_instrus
                     and _$_mce_errs.
        ' Case 2: string contains the keywords "create" and "mod=<modname>"
                  => a model named <modname> is in the workfile and contains explicit
                    leads; parse it to create the objects _$_mod_b, _$_mod_f,
                     _$_mce_instrus, and _$_mce_errs
        ' Case 3: string contains the keywords "mod_b=", "mod_f=", "mce_errs=", "mce_instrus
                  or the keywords "mod_b=", "mod_f=", "mce_vars="
                  => each keyword must be assigned to a string variable, whose contents are
                    used to define _$_mod_b, _$_mod_f, _$_mce_errs, and
                    _$_mce_instrus
          if @isempty(m_opts) = 1 then
          <sup>,</sup> *******************************
          ' case 1 code
            !m\_case = 1
            !z1 = @isobject(%_\$_mod_b)
            !z2 = @isobject(%_\$_mod_f)
            !z3 = @isobject("_$_mce_instrus")
            !z4 = @isobject("_$_mce_errs")
            !zsum = !z1+!z2+!z3+!z4
            if !zsum <> 4 then
              %err = "When the first argument to mce_run is a null string, a previous call to
             %err = %err + "mce_run must have placed the names of the backword and "
             %err = 5err + "forward looking models, list of mce instruments names "
              %err = %err + "and list of mce error names in various strings; at least one "
              %err = %err + "these strings either does not exist or contains the name of "
              %err = %err + "an object that does not exist. Execution terminates."
              @uiprompt(%err)
              stop
```

```
endif
'find alias of active scenario
%endog_active = {%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist("@active")
%endog_actual = {%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist
%word1_active = @word(%endog_active,1)
%word1_actual = @word(%endog_actual,1)
!a1 = @strlen(%word1_active) - @strlen(%word1_actual)
string _$_sufsim = @right(%word1_active,!a1)
else
m_opts = @lower(m_opts)
m_opts = @replace(m_opts," ","")
m_opts = @replace(m_opts,","," ")
m_opts = " " + m_opts + " "
if @instr(m_opts,"create") and @instr(m_opts,"mod=") then
<sup>,</sup> *****************************
' case 2 code
  !m_case = 2
  call mcz_equalopt("mod",m_opts)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %temp1 = @left(%temp,1)
    if %temp1 = "%" then
      %mod = @lower({%temp})
      else
      %mod = @lower(%temp)
      endif
    call mcz_parsemod({%mod})
    endif
  else
  !z1 = @instr(m_opts, "mod_b=")
  !z2 = @instr(m_opts,"mod_f=")
  !z3 = @instr(m_opts, "mce_errs=")
  !z4 = @instr(m_opts, "mce_instrus=")
  !z5 = @instr(m_opts,"mce_vars=")
  !zsum1 = (!z1>0)+(!z2>0)+(!z3>0)+(!z4>0)
  !zsum2 = (!z1>0)+(!z2>0)+(!z5>0)
  if !zsum1 = 4 or !zsum2 = 3 then
  , **********************
  , case 3 code
    !m_case = 3
    call mcz_equalopt("mod_b",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
      %temp = @lower({%temp})
      %_{\text{smod}} = %temp
      endif
```

```
call mcz_equalopt("mod_f",m_opts)
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        %_{\text{s_mod_f}} = %temp
        endif
      call mcz_equalopt("mce_errs",m_opts)
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        group _$_mce_errs {%temp}
        endif
      call mcz_equalopt("mce_instrus",m_opts)
      if @len(%temp)>0 then
        %temp = @lower({%temp})
        group _$_mce_instrus {%temp}
        endif
      else
    <sup>,</sup> ******************************
    ' m_opt string does not conform to a valid case
      @uiprompt("first argument to subroutine mce_run is incorrectly specified")
      stop
      endif
    endif
  endif
if !m_case = 2 or !m_case = 3 then
 call mcz_hasopt("adds",m_opts)
 if !hasflag = 1 then
    {%_$_mod_b}.addassign @all
    {%_$_mod_f}.addassign @all
    endif
  call mcz_hasopt("track",m_opts)
  if !hasflag = 1 then
    %track = "yes"
    %track_start = @word(@pagesmpl,1)
    %track_end = @word(@pagesmpl,2)
    call mcz_equalopt("tstart",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %track_start = @lower(%temp)
      endif
    call mcz_equalopt("tend",m_opts)
    if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %track_end = @lower(%temp)
      endif
    smpl %track_start %track_end
    {%_$_mod_b}.addinit(v=n) @all
```

```
{%_$_mod_f}.addinit(v=n) @all
   endif
 if !m\_case = 2 then
   group _$_mce_errs {{%mod}_targs}
   group _$_mce_instrus {{%mod}_instrus}
   endif
 if !m\_case = 3 then
   call mcz_equalopt("mce_vars",m_opts)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %temp = @lower({%temp})
     %errs = @wcross("e",%temp)
     group _$_mce_errs {%errs}
     %instrus = @wcross(%temp,"_a")
     group _$_mce_instrus {%instrus}
     endif
   endif
' 2. Examine a_opts string (specifies mce algorithm)
' Case 1: blank string and %existing_algos = "yes"
         => do not call mcz_algo (use existing settings)
' Case 2: blank string and %existing_algos <> "yes"
         => call mcz_algo to set default options
' Case 3: nonblank string
         => call mcz_algo using string to set options overrides
 if @isempty(a_opts) = 1 then
   if %existing_algos = "yes" then
     !a\_case = 1
     else
     !a\_case = 2
     call mcz_algo(%_$_mod_b,%_$_mod_f," ",_$_mce_instrus,_$_mce_errs)
     endif
   else
   !a case = 3
   call mcz_algo(%_$_mod_b,%_$_mod_f,a_opts,_$_mce_instrus,_$_mce_errs)
   endif
' 3. Examine s_opts string (specifies type of simulation)
```

```
, *******************************
 if @isempty(s_opts) = 1 then
    @uiprompt("error: no simulation action requested")
    stop
    endif
' make a copy of s_opts for parsing within this subroutine
' (the original is passed to other subroutines for additional
' parsing)
 string _$_opts = s_opts
 _$_opts = @lower(_$_opts)
 _$_opts = @replace(_$_opts," ","")
 _$_opts = @replace(_$_opts,","," ")
 _$_opts = " " + _$_opts + " "
' check for keywords that pertain to all simulation types
 call mcz_hasopt("scen",_$_opts)
 if !hasflag = 1 then
   call mcz_equalopt("suf",_$_opts)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     string _$_sufsim = @lower(%temp)
     string _$_sufsim = "_1"
     endif
   %sufsim = _$_sufsim
   %scenname = "mce_sim" + _$_sufsim
    {\%_$_mod_b}.scenario(n,a=\%sufsim) \%scenname
    {%_$_mod_f}.scenario(n,a=%sufsim) %scenname
    endif
 call mcz_equalopt("solveopt",_$_opts)
 \{\%_{\text{s-mod}}\}. solveopt (o=n,g=12,z=1e-12)
 {\frac{mod_f}{.solveopt(o=n,g=12,z=1e-12)}}
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
    {\%_s_mod_b}.solveopt({\{\temp\}\}})
    {\%_{mod_f}.solveopt({\{\%temp\}\}})}
    endif
 call mcz_equalopt("txt",_$_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   for !j = 1 to {%temp}.@linecount
     %tmp = @lower({%temp}.@line(!j))
     {%tmp}
     next
    endif
  !mceshow = 1
 call mcz_equalopt("o",_$_opts)
```

```
if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !mceshow = @val(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("sstart",_$_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %mcestart = @lower(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("send",_$_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %mceend = @lower(%temp)
   endif
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 !nqtrs = @obssmpl
 call mcz_hasopt("cleanup",_$_opts)
 if !hasflag = 1 then
   %cleanup = "yes"
   else
   %cleanup = "no"
   endif
 call mcz_hasopt("dontstop",_$_opts)
 if !hasflag = 1 then
   %dontstop = "yes"
   if @maxerrs - @errorcount < 2 then
      !tt = @errorcount + 2
     setmaxerrs !tt
     endif
   else
   %dontstop = "no"
   endif
' create various program variables and objects that are needed by
'all simulation types; compute initial Jacobian in some cases
 call mcz_sim_setup
 if %mcz_sim_setup = "err" then
   %mce_finish = "failed_solve"
   return
   endif
' determine simulation type
 call mcz_equalopt("type",_$_opts)
 if @len(%temp) > 0 then
   %simtype = @lower(%temp)
   if %simtype = "single" then
     call mcz_sim(_$_opts)
     if %mcz_sim = "err" then
       %mce_finish = "failed_solve"
```

```
return
          endif
        else
        if %simtype = "opt" or %simtype = "opttc" then
          call mcz_equalopt("targs",_$_opts)
          if @len(%temp)>0 then
            %targs = @lower(%temp)
            else
            Quiprompt("error: targs keyword is missing")
            stop
            endif
          call mcz_equalopt("instrus",_$_opts)
          if @len(%temp)>0 then
            %instrus = @lower(%temp)
            Quiprompt("error: instrus keyword is missing")
            stop
            endif
          call mcz_equalopt("cnstr",_$_opts)
          if @len(%temp)>0 then
            %cnstr = @lower(%temp)
            %cnstrflag = "yes"
            else
            text _$_blanktext
            %cnstr = "_$_blanktext"
            %cnstrflag = "no"
            endif
          call mcz_opt_setup(s_opts,{%instrus},{%targs},{%cnstr})
          @uiprompt("error: invalid simtype")
          stop
          endif
        endif
      @uiprompt("error: required simtype keyword not found")
      stop
      endif
  endsub
Defines:
  mce_run, used in chunks 32, 42, 48, 57, 100, 117, 119, 178, 181, 184, 188, and 191.
Uses mcz_algo 112, mcz_equalopt 116a, mcz_hasopt 116b, mcz_opt_setup 140,
  mcz_parsemod 109, mcz_sim 119, and mcz_sim_setup 117.
```

```
109
      \langle determine\ endogenous\ and\ exogenous\ variables\ 109 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (96)
        subroutine mcz_parsemod(model modo)
        ' This subroutine takes modo, a model with explicit leads, and creates
        ' four objects. The name of each created object starts with the name of the
        ' input model, which is denoted by <modname>.
        ' 1. Model _$_<modname>_b is the same as modo but with all leads replaced
              with exogenous variables
        ' 2. Model _$_<modname>_f contains the MCE error equations
        ' 3. String <modname>_instrus of the names of the added exogenous variables,
              which are the instruments to be used to drive the MCE errors to zero
        ' 4. String <modname>_targs of the names of the endogenous variables in
              <modname>_f, which are the names of MCE error variables
         ' preliminaries
          %ok_chars = "=-+*(^ "
          freeze(_$_modtext) modo.text
          string _$_endog = @lower(modo.@endoglist)
          !nvars = @wcount(_$_endog)
          %leadnames = " "
          %errnames = " "
          %mm = @lower(modo.@name)
          \_\_\_\_mod_b = "_$_" + %mm + "_b"
          \_\_$_mod_f = "_$_" + %mm + "_f"
          model {%_$_mod_b}
          model {%_$_mod_f}
         ' create model _$_<modname>_b
          smpl @all
          for !i2 = 1 to _$_modtext.@linecount
              %tmp2 = @ltrim(@lower(_$_modtext.@line(!i2)))
              %aa = @left(%tmp2,1)
               if %aa <> "@" then
                   for !i1 = 1 to !nvars
                       !occurrence = 1
                       %tmp1 = @word(_$_endog,!i1) + "("
                       !kk = @instr(%tmp2,%tmp1)
                       if !kk > 0 then
                           while !kk > 0
                               'three possibilities
                               ' 1. it is part of another variable name
                               ' 2. it is a lag
                               ' 3. it is a lead
```

June 19, 2016

```
'look at character in %tmp2 just before %tmp1 to make sure that
                         'is not part of a longer variable or coefficient name
                         %before = @mid(%tmp2, !kk-1,1)
                         if @instr(%ok_chars, %before) > 0 then
                             %tmp3 = @mid(%tmp2,!kk)
                              !kkll = @instr(%tmp3,"(")
                              !kkrr = @instr(%tmp3,")")
                              %laglead = @mid(%tmp3,!kkll, !kkrr-!kkll+1)
                              !11 = 0 + {%laglead}
                              if !ll <= 0 then 'it is a lag -- skip it
                                 !occurrence = !occurrence + 1
                                 endif
                              if !ll > 0 then 'it is a lead -- define a new variable
                                  %aaa = @word(_$_endog,!i1) + %laglead
                                  %bbb = @word(_$_endog,!i1) + "_ld_" + @str(!l1)
                                  series {%bbb} = {%aaa}
                                  %tmp4 = @replace(%tmp2,%aaa,%bbb,1)
                                  %tmp2 = %tmp4
                                  %leadnames = %leadnames + " " + %bbb
                                  endif
                              else
                                       'it is part of another variable name -- skip it
                              !occurrence = !occurrence + 1
                              endif
                         !kk = @instr(%tmp2,%tmp1,!occurrence)
                         wend
                    endif
               next
           endif
         {\%_{\text{mod}}}.append {\%tmp2}
      next
' create _$_<modname>_f
  %leadnames = @wunique(%leadnames)
  'smpl @all
  for !i1 = 1 to @wcount(%leadnames)
      %tmp1 = @word(%leadnames,!i1)
      !k1 = @instr(%tmp1,"_ld_")
      %tmp2 = @left(%tmp1,!k1-1)
      %tmp3 = @mid(%tmp1,!k1+4)
      %tmp4 = "err_" + %tmp2 + "_" + @str(%tmp3)
      series {\%tmp4} = 0
      %errnames = %errnames + " " + %tmp4
      \ensuremath{\text{wegstring}} = \ensuremath{\text{mp4}} + \ensuremath{\text{"="}} + \ensuremath{\text{mp1}} + \ensuremath{\text{"-"}} + \ensuremath{\text{mp2}} + \ensuremath{\text{"("}} + \ensuremath{\text{@str(\%tmp3)}} + \ensuremath{\text{")}}
      {%_$_mod_f}.append {%eqstring}
      next
```

```
^{\prime} create mce instrument and target strings
```

```
string {%mm}_instrus = %leadnames
string {%mm}_targs = %errnames
```

## endsub

Defines:

mcz_parsemod, used in chunk 102.

(96)

```
112
       \langle determine \ default \ method, \ linesearch, \ and \ other \ options \ 112 \rangle \equiv
           subroutine mcz_algo(string mcz_mod_b, string mcz_mod_f, string mcz_algo_opts, group
          %existing_algos = "yes"
          mcz_algo_opts = @lower(mcz_algo_opts)
          mcz_algo_opts = @replace(mcz_algo_opts," ","")
          mcz_algo_opts = @replace(mcz_algo_opts,","," ")
          mcz_algo_opts = " " + mcz_algo_opts + " "
         ' default values for method options
          %meth = "newton"
          %jinit = "interp"
           !nskip = 12
           !jtrigger = .5
         ' default values for linesearch options
           %linemeth = "armijo"
           !linetrigger = .9
           !mcelinemax = 10
           !lambda = 1.0
           !lrat = .5
           !mcz_step_max = 1.0
         ' default values for other options
           !mceconv = .00001
           !mcemaxiter = 20
           !mceptrb = .001
           !broymax = 600
         ' just in case
           %terminal = "no"
         ' are there overrides to defaults?
           if @len(mcz_algo_opts) > 0 then
           , *******************
           ' look for method option
             call mcz_equalopt("meth",mcz_algo_opts)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               %meth = @lower(%temp)
               if %meth = "broy" then
                 %jinit = "bd"
                 %jupdate = "na"
                 %linemeth = "lmr"
                 !mcemaxiter = 200
```

```
endif
   if %meth = "qnewton" then
     %jinit = "bd"
     %jupdate = "na"
     %linemeth = "lmr"
     !mcemaxiter = 200
     call mcz_equalopt("broymax",mcz_algo_opts)
     if @len(%temp)>0 then
        !broymax = @val(%temp)
       endif
     endif
   if %meth = "ft" then
     %jinit = "identity"
     %jupdate = "na"
     %linemeth = "na"
     !mcemaxiter = 500
     endif
   endif
<sup>,</sup> ***************************
' look for jinit and jt options
 call mcz_equalopt("jinit",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %temp = @lower(%temp)
   if @instr(%temp,"interp(") then
     !k1 = @instr(%temp,"(")
     !nskip = -@val(@mid(%temp,!k1))
     %tmp1 = @mid(%temp,!k1)
     %jinit = "interp"
     else
     %jinit = @lower(%temp)
     endif
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("jt",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !jtrigger = @val(%temp)
   endif
, *******************
' look for jupdate option
 %jupdate = %jinit
 call mcz_equalopt("jupdate",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %temp = @lower(%temp)
   if @instr(%temp, "interp(") then
     !k1 = @instr(%temp,"(")
```

114 frbuseview.nw

```
!nskip = -@val(@mid(%temp,!k1))
     %tmp1 = @mid(%temp,!k1)
     %jupdate = "interp"
     else
     %jupdate = @lower(%temp)
     endif
   endif
, ************
' look for options related to linesearch
 call mcz_equalopt("lmeth",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   %linemeth = @lower(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("lt",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   !linetrigger = @val(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("lmax",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   !mcelinemax = @val(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("lambda",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   !lambda = @val(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("stepmax",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   !mcz_step_max = @val(%temp)
   endif
<sup>,</sup> ************************
' look for other options
 call mcz_equalopt("c",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   !mceconv = @val(%temp)
 call mcz_equalopt("m",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   !mcemaxiter = @val(%temp)
   endif
 call mcz_equalopt("p",mcz_algo_opts)
 if @len(%temp)>0 then
   !mceptrb = @val(%temp)
   endif
```

endif

endsub

```
, ***********
' verify the MCE instrument and error arguments
 !nmceinstrus = _$_mce_instrus.@count
 !nmcetargs = _$_mce_errs.@count
 if !nmcetargs <> !nmceinstrus then
   Quiprompt("Error: There must be as many mce errors as there are mce instruments.")
   stop
   endif
<sup>,</sup> ****************************
' check that mce instruments are exogenous variables or add factors
' in the lag model
 %exog_vnames = {%_$_mod_b}.@exoglist
 %adds_vnames = {%_$_mod_b}.@addfactors
 %exog_vnames = %exog_vnames + " " + %adds_vnames
 %endog_vnames = {%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist
 for !i = 1 to _$_mce_instrus.@count
   %vvv = _$_mce_instrus.@seriesname(!i)
   !cc = @wfindnc(%exog_vnames,%vvv)
   if !cc = 0 then
     %errstring = "mce control variable " + %vvv + " is not an exogenous variable or add factor
     @uiprompt(%errstring)
     stop
     endif
   next
, *******************
' check that mce errors are endogenous variables in the lead model
 %endog_lnames = {%_$_mod_f}.@endoglist
 for !i = 1 to _$_mce_errs.@count
   %vvv = _$_mce_errs.@seriesname(!i)
   !cc = @wfindnc(%endog_lnames,%vvv)
   if !cc = 0 then
     %errstring = "mce error variable " + %vvv + " is not an endogenous variable in the lead
     @uiprompt(%errstring)
     stop
     endif
   next
```

```
Defines:
           mcz_algo, used in chunk 102.
         Uses mcz_equalopt 116a.
116a
         \langle parse\ options\ containing\ equal\ signs\ 116a \rangle \equiv
                                                                                   (96)
             subroutine mcz_equalopt(string optionstext,string opts)
           ' parse an option that contains an "=" sign
             optionstext = " " + optionstext + "="
             !k10 = @instr(opts,optionstext)
             if !k10 > 0 then
                !k11 = @len(optionstext)
               %tmp10 = @mid(opts,!k10+!k11)
                !k12 = @instr(%tmp10," ")
               %temp = @left(%tmp10,!k12-1)
                else
               %temp = ""
                endif
             endsub
         Defines:
           mcz_equalopt, used in chunks 102, 112, 119, 140, and 172.
116b
         \langle parse\ options\ not\ containing\ equal\ signs\ 116b \rangle \equiv
                                                                                   (96)
             subroutine mcz_hasopt(string optionstext,string opts)
           ' parse an option that does not contain an "=" sign
             !k10 = @wfind(opts,optionstext)
             if !k10 > 0 then
                !hasflag = 1
                else
                !hasflag = 0
                endif
             endsub
        Defines:
           mcz_hasopt, used in chunks 102, 119, and 140.
```

```
117
     \langle create\ common\ variables,\ strings,\ matrices,\ vectors,\ and\ tables\ 117 \rangle \equiv
                                                             (96)
         subroutine mcz_sim_setup
       ' create various program variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables
       ' that are common to all simulation types
         !tmcetargs = !nmcetargs * !nqtrs
         !tmceinstrus = !nmceinstrus * !nqtrs
         %mce_targ_names = _$_mce_errs.@members
         %mce_instru_names = _$_mce_instrus.@members
         string _$_mod_f_exog = @lower({%_$_mod_f}.@exoglist)
         string _$_mod_b_endog = @lower({%_$_mod_b}.@endoglist)
         %fvars = @wintersect(_$_mod_f_exog,_$_mod_b_endog)
         {%_$_mod_f}.override {%fvars}
         !re_counter = 0
       ' create additional matrix/vector objects
         vector(!mcemaxiter+1) _$_mce_loss_vec
         vector(!mcemaxiter+1) _$_mce_conv_vec
         vector( !nmceinstrus*!nqtrs) _$_mce_direction = 0
         vector( !nmceinstrus*!nqtrs) _$_mce_instru_vec = 0
         vector(!nmcetargs*!nqtrs) _$_mce_gap_vec
         matrix _$_mce_ptrb_mat = @filledmatrix(!nqtrs,!nmceinstrus,!mceptrb)
         matrix(!nmcetargs*!nqtrs,1) _$_mce_targ_vec
         matrix(!tmcetargs,1) _$_mce_targ_dvec
       ' misc
         table(!mcemaxiter+2,6) mce_sim_stats
       ' compute initial jacobian except when it is an identity matrix
       ' or when its been created by a previous call to mce_run
         if %jinit <> "identity" and !a_case <> 1 then
           !mcetry = 1
           smpl %mcestart %mceend
           call mcz_solvit
           if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
```

```
118 frbuseview.nw
```

June 19, 2016

```
%mcz_sim_setup = "err"
  return
  endif

call mcz_derivs
endif
```

## endsub

Defines:

mcz_sim_setup, used in chunk 102.
Uses mce_run 102, mcz_derivs 130, and mcz_solvit 128.

```
119
      \langle model\ consistent\ coefficient\ simulation\ 119 \rangle \equiv
                                                                  (96)
          subroutine mcz_sim(string mcz_sim_options)
          %mcz_sim = "ok"
        ' 1. set options based on defaults and overrides in string mcz_sim_options
        ' for some unknown reason, sometimes eviews bombs unless mcz_sim_options
        ' is assigned to another string before processing it
          %mso = mcz_sim_options
          %mso = @lower(%mso)
          %mso = @replace(%mso," ","")
          %mso = @replace(%mso,","," ")
          %mso = " " + %mso + " "
          %terminal = "no"
          %mcevars_b = " "
          %mcevars_f = " "
          if @len(%mso) > 0 then
           call mcz_hasopt("terminal",%mso)
            if !hasflag = 1 then
             %terminal = "yes"
             call mcz_equalopt("mcevars_b",%mso)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               %mcevars_b = @lower(%temp)
               call mcz_equalopt("mcevars_f",%mso)
               if @len(%temp)>0 then
                 %mcevars_f = @lower(%temp)
                 if @wcount(%mcevars_b) <> @wcount(%mcevars_f) then
                   %estring = "Error: mcevars_b and mcevars_f have different numbers of variables"
                   @uiprompt(%estring)
                   stop
                   endif
                 endif
               endif
             endif
            endif
          if %linemeth = "lmr" then
            !mhistory = 4
            !tmin = .1
```

!tmax = .5

```
!gammak = 10^{-4}
   endif
' 2. set up table of iteration-by-iteration statistics
if @isobject("mce_sim_stats") then
   delete mce_sim_stats
   endif
 table(!mcemaxiter+2,6) mce_sim_stats
 mce_sim_stats.setwidth(1:1) 6
 mce_sim_stats.setwidth(2:6) 11
 mce_sim_stats.setlines(a2:f2) +b
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,1,"iter")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,2,"converge")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,2,"stat")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,3,"SSR")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,3,"stat")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,4,"step")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,4,"length")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,5,"step")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,5,"iters")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,1,6,"Newton MCE")
 setcell(mce_sim_stats,2,6,"deriv's?")
' 3. information text file
if @isobject("mce_sim_text") then
   delete mce_sim_text
   endif
 text mce_sim_text
 mce_sim_text.append Simulation start = {%mcestart}
                                = {%mceend}
 mce_sim_text.append Simulation end
 mce_sim_text.append MCE method = %meth
 if %meth = "newton" then
   mce_sim_text.append -- Initial jacobian = %jinit
   if %jinit = "interp" then
    mce_sim_text.append ---- Jacobian interpolation parameter = {!nskip}
    endif
   mce_sim_text.append -- Recompute Jacobian based on jtrigger = {!jtrigger}
   mce_sim_text.append -- Recompute jacobian using method = {%jupdate}
```

```
endif
 if %meth = "broy" or %meth = "qnewton" then
   mce_sim_text.append -- Initial Jacobian approximation = %jinit
   if %jinit = "interp" then
     mce_sim_text.append ---- Interpolation parameter = {!nskip}
     endif
   if %meth = "qnewton" then
     mce_sim_text.append ---- QNewton iteration switch = {!broymax}
     endif
   endif
 if %meth = "ft" then
   mce_sim_text.append -- Fixed step size =
                                         {!lambda}
 mce_sim_text.append Linesearch method = {%linemeth}
 if %linemeth <> "na" then
   mce_sim_text.append -- Linesearch trigger = {!linetrigger}
   mce_sim_text.append -- Maximum linesearch iterations = {!mcelinemax}
   endif
 mce_sim_text.append Convergence criteria = {!mceconv}
 mce_sim_text.append Maximum number of MCE iterations = {!mcemaxiter}
 mce_sim_text.append MCE instrument perturbation factor = {!mceptrb}
 mce_sim_text.append Intermediate output level factor = {!mceshow}
 mce_sim_text.append MCE instrument variables = {%mce_instru_names}
 mce_sim_text.append MCE error variables = {%mce_targ_names}
 mce_sim_text.append There are {!tmceinstrus} instrument and {!tmcetargs} error observations
 !re_counter = !re_counter + 1
' 4. solution iterations
' initialize counters, switches, etc.
 !mcetry = 0
 %mce_converge = "no"
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 _$_mce_instru_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_mce_instrus))
 <sup>,</sup>*****************************
 ' start of iteration loop
 while !mcetry <= !mcemaxiter and %mce_converge = "no"
```

```
!mcetry = !mcetry + 1
  setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,1,!mcetry-1,0)
 vector _$_instru_prev = _$_mce_instru_vec
 vector _$_gap_prev = _$_mce_gap_vec
  !mcz_step = !mcz_step_max
 call mcz_solvit
  if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
   %mcz_sim = "err"
   return
   endif
  if !mcetry > 1 then
    !gamma = _$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry)/_$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
    !loss_prev = _$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
    setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,5,1,0)
   if %linemeth <> "none" and !gamma > !linetrigger then
      if %linemeth = "lmr" then
        call mcz_lmr
        if %mcz_lmr = "err" then
         %mcz_sim = "err"
         return
         endif
        endif
      if %linemeth = "armijo" then
        call mcz_armijo
        if %mcz_armijo = "err" then
         %mcz_sim = "err"
         return
          endif
        endif
      endif
   endif
  if !mceshow < 3 then
   statusline mce solution, iteration !mcetry, f(x) = !nconv
   endif
' test for convergence or iteration limit
 mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,2) = _$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry)
  if _$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry) < !mceconv then</pre>
   %mce_converge = "yes"
   mce_sim_text.append At iteration {!mcetry}, convergence
   %mce_finish = "yes"
   endif
```

```
if !mcetry = !mcemaxiter and _$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry) >= !mceconv then
   mce_sim_text.append No convergence in {!mcemaxiter} iterations
   if %dontstop = "yes" then
     %mce_finish = "no"
     %mce_converge = "yes"
     mce_sim_text.append Terminating call to mce_run, but execution continues
     Quiprompt("No convergence in maximum number of iterations. Execution terminating.")
     stop
     endif
   endif
' continue if not converged
 if %mce_converge = "no" then
  , *****************
  ' Newton algorithm (optionally update MCE jacobian)
   if %meth = "newton" then
     if !mcetry = 1 then
       if %jinit = "identity" then
         matrix _$_mce_der_mat = !dfactor*@identity(!nmceinstrus*!nqtrs)
       if %jinit = "bd" then
         for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
           !r = (!ijj-1)*!nqtrs
           matrix _$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj} = @subextract(_$_mce_der_mat,!r+1,!r+1,!r+!nqtrs,!r+
         delete(noerr) _$_mce_der_mat
       if %jinit <> "identity" then
         mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+3,6) = "yes"
         endif
       if (!gamma >= !jtrigger and %jupdate <> "none") then
         %jinit_bac = %jinit
         %jinit = %jupdate
         call mcz_derivs
         %jinit = %jinit_bac
         endif
       endif
     if %jinit = "bd" then
       for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
         vector _$_vec_adds = -_$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj}*@subextract(_$_mce_gap_vec,(!ijj-1)*!nd
         matplace(_$_mce_direction,_$_vec_adds,(!ijj-1)*!nqtrs+1,1)
```

```
next
     else
     _$_mce_direction = -(_$_mce_der_mat*_$_mce_gap_vec)
     endif
   endif
, *****************
' Broyden algorithms
 if %meth = "broy" or %meth = "qnewton" then
   if !mcetry = 1 then
     if %jinit <> "identity" then
       _$_mce_direction = -(_$_mce_der_mat*_$_mce_gap_vec)
       matrix _$_mce_der_mat = @identity(!nmceinstrus*!nqtrs)
       _$_mce_direction = -_$_mce_gap_vec
       endif
     if %jinit = "bd" then
       for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
         !r = (!ijj-1)*!nqtrs
         next
       if %bmeth = "qnewton" then
         delete(noerr) _$_mce_der_mat
         endif
       endif
     endif
   if !mcetry > 1 then
     vector _$_instru_delta = _$_mce_instru_vec - _$_instru_prev
     vector _$_gap_delta = _$_mce_gap_vec - _$_gap_prev
   , **********
     if %meth = "broy" then
       matrix _$_jy = _$_mce_der_mat*_$_gap_delta
       matrix _$_sj = @transpose(_$_instru_delta)*_$_mce_der_mat
       scalar _$_sjf = @sum(@transpose(_$_instru_delta)*_$_jy)
       _{\text{mce\_der_mat}} = _{\text{mce\_der_mat}} + ((_{\text{s_instru\_delta}} - _{\text{s_jy}})*_{\text{s_j}}/_{\text{s_j}}
       _$_mce_direction = -(_$_mce_der_mat*_$_mce_gap_vec)
       endif
   , **********
     if %meth = "qnewton" then
       if !mcetry = 2 then
       ' create some matrices on first pass
         vector(!broymax) _$_stp_nrm
         matrix(!tmceinstrus,!broymax) _$_stp
```

```
vector (!broymax) _$_lam_rec
                 matrix(!tmceinstrus,1) _$_z
                 vector(!broymax) _$_counter
                 for !iq = 1 to !broymax
                       _$_counter(!iq) = !iq
                       next
                 endif
           if !mcetry <= !broymax + 1 then
                 !q = !mcetry-1
                 !f = !q
                 else
                 !q = @mod(!mcetry-1,!broymax) + 1
                 !f = !broymax
                 call shiftleft(_$_counter,1)
                 endif
           colplace(_$_stp,_$_instru_delta,!q)
           _$_stp_nrm(!q) = @norm(_$_instru_delta,2)
           _$_lam_rec(!q) = !mcz_step
           if %jinit = "bd" and !mcetry <= !broymax + 1 then
                 for !ijj = 1 to !nmcetargs
                       vector _$_vec_adds = -_$_mce_der_mat_{!ijj}* @subextract(_$_mce_gap_vec,(!ijj-1
                      matplace(_$_z,_$_vec_adds,(!ijj-1)*!nqtrs+1,1)
                      next
                 else
                 _{z} = -_{mce_{gap_{vec}}}
                 endif
           if !mcetry > 2 then
                 for !kbroy = 2 to !f
                       !k0 = _$_counter(!kbroy)
                       !k1 = _{counter(!kbroy - 1)}
                       !a = _$_lam_rec(!k1)/_$_lam_rec(!k0)
                       !b = _{lam_rec(!k1)} - 1
                       _$_z = _$_z + (!a*@columnextract(_<math>$_stp, !k0) + !b*@columnextract(_<math>$_stp, !k1))*(@tolumnextract(___stp, !k1)) + (!a*@columnextract(___stp, !k1)) + (!a*@columnextract(___stp, !k1)) + (!a*@columnextract(___stp, !k1)) + (!a*@columnextract(__stp, !k1)) + (!a*@columnextract(__st
                      next
                 endif
           !nrm2 = _\$_stp_nrm(!q)^2
           !lam = _$_lam_rec(!q)
           !stz = @sum(@transpose(_$_instru_delta)*_$_z)
           _$_mce_direction = (!nrm2*_$_z-(1-!lam)*!stz*_$_instru_delta)/(!nrm2-!lam*!stz)
           endif
     endif
endif
```

```
, *****************
     ' Fair-Taylor algorithm
      if %meth = "ft" then
        _$_mce_direction = -!lambda*_$_mce_gap_vec
        endif
     , ****************
      endif
     wend
 ' 5. final steps
 scalar _$_iterations = !mcetry
   if !mceshow = 2 then
     close mce_sim_stats
     endif
   if !mceshow = 1 or !mceshow = 2 then
     if @isobject("mce_sim_spool") then
      delete mce_sim_spool
      endif
    spool mce_sim_spool
    mce_sim_spool.append mce_sim_stats
    mce_sim_spool.append mce_sim_text
    mce_sim_spool.name untitled01 mce_sim_stats
    mce_sim_spool.name untitled02 mce_sim_text
     show mce_sim_spool
     endif
   if !mceshow < 3 then
     statusline mcz_sim finished
     endif
   if %simtype = "single" and %cleanup = "yes" then
     delete(noerr) _$_*
     endif
 endsub
Defines:
```

mcz_sim, used in chunks 100, 102, 151, 156, 164, and 166.
Uses mce_run 102, mcz_armijo 137, mcz_derivs 130, mcz_equalopt 116a, mcz_hasopt 116b, mcz_lmr 136, mcz_solvit 128, and shiftleft 171a.

```
128
      \langle solve\ model\ consistent\ instrument\ values\ 128 \rangle \equiv
                                                                         (96)
        subroutine mcz_solvit
         ' This subroutine first sets the MCE instrument values based on the current
         ' optimal direction and choice of step size, and then solves the models
          %mcz_solvit = "ok"
         ' update instrument values based on current direction and step size
          if !mcetry > 1 then
            mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,4) = !mcz_step
             _$_mce_instru_vec = _$_instru_prev + !mcz_step*_$_mce_direction
            matrix _$_tmp_mat = @unvec(_$_mce_instru_vec,!nqtrs)
            mtos(_$_tmp_mat,_$_mce_instrus)
             endif
         ' solve lag model
           smpl %mcestart %mceend
           !err_before = @errorcount
           {\%_{mod_b}.solve}
           !err_after = @errorcount
          if !err_after > !err_before then
            if %dontstop = "yes" then
               %mcz_solvit = "err"
               return
               else
               @uiprompt("Error in solving lag model: execution terminating")
               endif
             endif
         ' optionally set terminal conditions on first iteration
           if !mcetry = 1 and %terminal = "yes" then
            call mcz_terminal
             endif
         ' solve lead model
           smpl %mcestart %mceend
           !err_before = @errorcount
           {\%_{mod_f}.solve}
           !err_after = @errorcount
           if !err_after > !err_before then
             if %dontstop = "yes" then
               %mcz_solvit = "err"
              return
               else
```

```
@uiprompt("Error in solving lead model: execution terminating")
        stop
        endif
      endif
  ' create group of the solution values of the mce target variables
  ' on the first iteration
    if !mcetry = 1 then
      {%_$_mod_f}.makegroup _$_mce_errs_sols {%mce_targ_names}
      endif
  \mbox{'} compute mce error functions
    _$_mce_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_mce_errs_sols))
    _$_mce_gap_vec = _$_mce_targ_vec
    !nloss = @norm(_$_mce_gap_vec,2)^2
    mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,3) = !nloss
    _$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry) = !nloss
    !nconv = @max(@abs(_$_mce_gap_vec))
    _$_mce_conv_vec(!mcetry) = !nconv
    if !mcetry > 1 then
      !gamma = !nloss/_$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1)
      endif
    if !mceshow = 2 then
      show mce_sim_stats
      endif
  endsub
Defines:
 mcz_solvit, used in chunks 100, 117, 119, 136, and 137.
Uses mcz_terminal 138.
```

```
130
       \langle compute\ derivatives\ of\ mce\ targets\ wrt\ mce\ instruments\ 130 \rangle \equiv
                                                                          (96)
         subroutine mcz_derivs
         'This subroutine computes the derivatives of the mce targets wrt the mce instruments
          mce_sim_stats(!mcetry+2,6) = "yes"
          matrix _$_mce_der_mat = @filledmatrix(!nmceinstrus*!nqtrs,!nmcetargs*!nqtrs,0)
           if !mcetry > 1 then
             '_$_mce_ptrb_mat = @abs(@unvec(!mcz_step*_$_mce_direction,!nqtrs)) + 1e-6
             _$_mce_ptrb_mat = @abs(@unvec(!mcz_step*_$_mce_direction,!nqtrs)) + 1e-4
             endif
           smpl %mcestart %mceend
           _$_mce_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_mce_errs_sols))
           !maxlead = 1
         <sup>,</sup> **********************
         ' construct vector that determines when exact derivatives
         ' need to be computed
         '_$_dvec > 0 => period in which derivatives are to be simulated
         '_$_dvec = 1 => but derivatives do not have to be spread/interpolated forward or ba
         '_s_dvec = 2 \Rightarrow and derivatives have to be spread forward down diagonals
         '_$_dvec = 3 => and derivatives have to be spread backward up diagonals
         '_$_dvec = 4 => and derivaties have to be interpolated backward along diagonals
         ' _$_dvec = 5 => hybrid
          vector(!nqtrs) _$_dvec = 0
           <sup>,</sup> ***********************
           if %jinit = "every" then
             _{\text{s_dvec}} = _{\text{s_dvec}} + 1
             endif
           , *******************
           if %jinit = "interp" then
             _{\text{s_dvec}(1)} = 1
             _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead) = 4
             for !ij0 = (1+!nskip) to (!nqtrs-!maxlead-1) step !nskip
               _{\frac{1}{2}}dvec(!ij0) = 4
               next
             if !maxlead > 0 then
               for !ij0 = (!nqtrs-!maxlead+1) to !nqtrs
                 _{\frac{1}{2}}dvec(!ij0) = 1
                 next
```

```
endif
   if _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead-1) = 4 then
     _$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead) = 1
     endif
   endif
, ***********
 if %jinit = "bd" then
   !bd_col = @floor(!nqtrs/2)
   _{\text{s_dvec}(!bd\_col)} = 5
   endif
<sup>,</sup> ***********************
' code modified 5/27/10 to reduce the number of derivative
' sims by 1 per mc variable -- will work only when
' maxlead = 1
 if %jinit = "linear" then
   _{\text{s_dvec}(1)} = 2
   _{\text{s_dvec(!nqtrs)}} = 3
   '_$_dvec(!nqtrs-!maxlead) = 3
   'for !ij0 = !nqtrs - !maxlead + 1 to !nqtrs
    ' _$_dvec(!ij0) = 1
    , next
   endif
<sup>,</sup> **********************
, ****************
' Outer loop: specifies which instrument is shocked
 for !ij1 = 1 to !nmceinstrus
   %instru_name = _$_mce_instrus.@seriesname(!ij1)
   statusline computing MCE derivatives for instrument %instru_name
  , *****************************
  ' Middle loop: simulates effects of instrument shock for selected time periods
   !skip = 0
   for !ij2 = 1 to !nqtrs
     !skip = !skip + 1
     if _{\text{s_dvec}(!ij2)} > 0 then
        !perturbit = _$_mce_ptrb_mat(!ij2,!ij1)
        !col = (!ij1-1)*!nqtrs + !ij2
       smpl %mcestart + !ij2-1 %mcestart + !ij2-1
        {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} + !perturbit
        smpl %mcestart %mceend
        {\%_{\text{mod}}}.solve
        {\%_{mod_f}.solve}
```

```
_$_mce_targ_dvec = @vec(@convert(_$_mce_errs_sols))
  matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,(_$_mce_targ_dvec-_$_mce_targ_vec)/!perturbit,1,!col
  smpl %mcestart + !ij2-1 %mcestart + !ij2-1
  {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} - !perturbit
, ******************
' Inner loop: place and/or interpolates derivatives
  if %jinit <> "every" then
   for !ij3 = 1 to !nmceinstrus
      !row = (!ij3-1)*!nqtrs + 1
     matrix _$_tempa = @subextract(_$_mce_der_mat,!row,!col,!row+!nqtrs-1,!col
    if %jinit = "linear" then
      ' forward loop moves the derivative diagonally down to the right
      ', when _{\text{sdvec}} = 2
       if _{\text{s_dvec}(!ij2)} = 2 \text{ then}
       for !ij4 = 1 to (!nqtrs - !maxlead - 1)
         matrix _$_tempb = @subextract(_$_tempa,1,1,!nqtrs-!ij4,1)
         matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempb,!row+!ij4,!col+!ij4)
         next
       endif
      ' backward loop moves the derivative diagonally up to the left
      ' when _{\text{sdvec}} = 3
       if _{\text{s_dvec}(!ij2)} = 3 \text{ then}
         !ij5 = !nqtrs - !maxlead - 1
         for !ij4 = 1 to !ij5
           matrix _$_tempb = @subextract(_$_tempa,(1+!ij4),1,!nqtrs-!maxlead,:
           matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempb,!row,!col-!ij4)
           next
         endif
      ' fill unassigned elements of last !maxlead rows with zeros when _$_dvec
       if _{\text{s_dvec(!ij2)}} = 3 \text{ then}
         !ij5 = !nqtrs - 2
         matrix(1,!ij5) _$_tempc = 0
         for !ij4 = 1 to !maxlead
           matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempc,!row+!nqtrs-!ij4,!col-!nqtrs+2)
           next
         endif
       endif
```

```
if (%jinit = "interp") and (_$_dvec(!ij2) = 4) then
  !nn2 = !nqtrs-!skip+1
  'fill in columns between current and previous derivative
  '_$_tempa holds current derivative, _$_tempb holds previous derivative
 matrix _$_tempa1 = @subextract(_$_tempa,1,1,!skip,1)
 matrix _$_tempa2 = @subextract(_$_tempa,!skip+1,1,!nqtrs,1)
  'previous derivative
 matrix _$_tempb = @subextract(_$_mce_der_mat,!row,!col-!skip,!row+!nqtrs-1,!col-!
 matrix _$_tempb1 = @subextract(_$_tempb,1,1,!nn2-1,1)
 matrix _$_tempb2 = @subextract(_$_tempb,!nn2,1,!nqtrs,1)
  'forward loop moves lower (ie, nonoverlapping) portion of _$_tempb diagonally down
  for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
   matrix _$_tempb2a = @subextract(_$_tempb2,1,1,!skip-!ij4,1)
   matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempb2a,!row+!nn2-1+!ij4,!col-!skip+!ij4)
   next
  'backward loop moves upper (ie, nonoverlapping) portion of _$_tempa diagonally up
  for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
   matrix _$_tempa1a = @subextract(_$_tempa1,1+!ij4,1,!skip,1)
   matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempa1a,!row,!col-!ij4)
   next
  'overlap loop interpolates upper part of _$_tempb and lower part of _$_tempa
  for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
   matrix _$_tempc = ((!skip-!ij4)/!skip)*_$_tempb1 + (!ij4/!skip)*_$_tempa2
   matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempc,!row+!ij4,!col-!skip+!ij4)
  'optionally interpolate elements of last !maxlead rows across each row
  !qqqq = 0
  if !qqqq = 1 then
    !nn3 = !nqtrs - !maxlead + 1
   matrix _$_tempa3 = @subextract(_$_tempa,!nn3,1,!nqtrs,1)
   matrix _$_tempb3 = @subextract(_$_tempb,!nn3,1,!nqtrs,1)
   for !ij4 = 1 to !skip-1
     matrix _$_tempc = ((!skip-!ij4)/!skip)*_$_tempb3 + (!ij4/!skip)*_$_tempa3
     matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempc,!row+!nn3-1,!col-!skip+!ij4)
     next
   endif
  endif
```

```
'The bd method takes account of only two own-derivative elements --
        'one on the diagonal and one on the first super diagonal. The latter is
        'important for one-lead euler equations.
        'there is some crude coding here, reflecting the fact that the full column
        'of the derivatives matrix has already been filled in and needs to be
        'zeroed out
         if (%jinit = "bd") and (_$_dvec(!ij2) = 5) and (!ij1=!ij3) then
           matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,0*_$_mce_targ_dvec,1,!col)
           !diag = _$_tempa(!bd_col,1)
           vector(!nqtrs-1) _$_tempb = _$_tempa(!bd_col-1,1)
           'vector(!nqtrs-1) _$_tempb1 = _$_tempa(!bd_col+1,1)
           matrix(!nqtrs,!nqtrs) _$_tempc
           matrix _$_tempc = !diag*@identity(!nqtrs) + @makediagonal(_$_tempb,1)
           'matrix _$_tempc = !diag*@identity(!nqtrs) + @makediagonal(_$_tempb,1) +
           _$_tempc = @inverse(_$_tempc)
           matplace(_$_mce_der_mat,_$_tempc,!row,!row)
           endif
          next
         !skip = 0
         endif
       endif
   next
, ********************
 delete(noerr) _$_tempa _$_tempb _$_tempc _$_tempd
 'recalculate current solution
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 {\%_{\rm mod_b}}.solve
 {\%_{mod_f}.solve}
<sup>,</sup> ***********************
' invert derivative matrix (unless using bd method, in which case
' it's already inverted)
 if %jinit <> "bd" then
   statusline inverting MCE derivative matrix
   _$_mce_der_mat = @inverse(_$_mce_der_mat)
   endif
```

## endsub

Defines:

mcz_derivs, used in chunks 117 and 119.

136  $\langle model\ consistent\ coefficient\ non-monotone\ step-length\ procedure\ 136 \rangle \equiv$ (96)subroutine mcz_lmr %mcz_lmr = "ok" !step_pos = !mcz_step !step_neg = !mcz_step %line_converge = "no" !nk = _\$_mce_loss_vec(1)/(!mcetry)^2 !loss_prev = _\$_mce_loss_vec(!mcetry-1) if !mhistory >= (!mcetry-1) then vector losshist = @subextract(_\$_mce_loss_vec,1,1,!mcetry-1,1) vector losshist = @subextract(_\$_mce_loss_vec,!mcetry-!mhistory,1,!mcetry-1,1) endif !fkbar = @max(losshist) for !j = 1 to !mcelinemax if !j > 1 then !mcz_step = !step_pos call mcz_solvit if %mcz_solvit = "err" then %mcz_lmr = "err" return endif if !nloss <= (!fkbar + !nk - !gammak*!step_pos^2*!loss_prev) then %line_converge = "yes" exitloop else !nloss_pos = !nloss !mcz_step = -!step_neg call mcz_solvit if %mcz_solvit = "err" then %mcz_lmr = "err" return endif if !nloss <= (!fkbar + !nk - !gammak*!step_neg^2*!loss_prev) then %line_converge = "yes" exitloop endif

!alphat = !step_pos^2*!loss_prev/(!nloss_pos + (2*!step_pos-1)*!loss_prev)

!nloss_neg = !nloss

else

if !alphat < (!tmin*!step_pos) then
!step_pos = !tmin*!step_pos</pre>

```
if !alphat > !tmax*!step_pos then
                  !step_pos = !tmax*!step_pos
                  else
                  !step_pos = !alphat
                  endif
                endif
              !alphat = !step_neg^2*!loss_prev/(!nloss_neg + (2*!step_neg-1)*!loss_prev)
              if !alphat < (!tmin*!step_neg) then</pre>
                !step_neg = !tmin*!step_neg
                else
                if !alphat > !tmax*!step_neg then
                  !step_neg = !tmax*!step_neg
                  !step_neg = !alphat
                  endif
                endif
             next
           setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,5,!j,0)
         endsub
       Defines:
         mcz_lmr, used in chunk 119.
       Uses mcz_solvit 128.
       \langle model\ consistent\ armijo\ optimization\ rule\ 137 \rangle \equiv
137
                                                                             (96)
         subroutine mcz_armijo
           %mcz_armijo = "ok"
           !iarm = 0
           while ((!nloss > (1-.01*!mcz_step)*!loss_prev) and !iarm < !mcelinemax)</pre>
              !mcz_step = !lrat * !mcz_step
             call mcz_solvit
             if %mcz_solvit = "err" then
                %mcz_armijo = "err"
                return
                endif
              !iarm = !iarm + 1
           setcell(mce_sim_stats,!mcetry+2,5,!iarm,0)
         endsub
       Defines:
         mcz_armijo, used in chunk 119.
       Uses mcz_solvit 128.
```

```
138
       \langle variable\ terminal\ values\ 138 \rangle \equiv
                                                                             (96)
         subroutine mcz_terminal
         ' Set terminal values for all variables in _$_mod_f that might
         ' appear with leads, based on the simulated values of the corresponding
         ' variables in _$_mod_b at the end of the simulation period.
         ' Terminal values of stationary variables equal their last simulated
         ' level. Terminal values of nonstationary are based on extrapolating their
         ' simulated growth rates.
         ' This subroutine is usually called only once per MCE simulation and only
         ' for MCE simulations of permanent shocks. Multiple calls to this
         ' subroutine may result in convergence problems as a result of terminal
         ' values that drift from iteration to iteration.
         ', %fvars (variables that are exogenous in _$_mod_f and
         ' also endogenous in _$_mod_b)
           {%_$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_fvars_sols {%fvars}
           for !ijj = 1 to @wcount(%fvars)
             %tmpa = @lower(@word(%fvars,!ijj))
             %tmpb = _$_fvars_sols.@seriesname(!ijj)
             smpl %mceend + 8 %mceend + 8
              !tmpmean = @abs(@mean({%tmpa}))
             if !tmpmean > .001 then
                series _{\frac{1}{2}}tmpgrowth = _{\frac{1}{2}}dmovav(_{\frac{1}{2}}tmpa_{\frac{1}{2}},0,1)/{_{\frac{1}{2}}tmpa_{\frac{1}{2}}(-1),8))
                else
                series _$_tmpgrowth = 0
                endif
              !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth)
              if (!tmpscal < .001) then
                'stationary case
                smpl %mceend + 1 @last
                {\text{tmpb}} = {\text{tmpb}}(-1)
                else
                'nonstationary case
                smpl %mceend %mceend
                series _$tmpgrowth = @movav(d({\%tmpb},0,1)/{\%tmpb}(-1),8)
                !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth) + 1
                smpl %mceend + 1 @last
                {\text{tmpb}} = {\text{tmpscal}} *{\text{tmpb}} (-1)
                endif
              {\text{mpa}} = {\text{mpb}}
```

next

```
' mcevars_f (mce variables in _$_mod_f, if any) have terminal conditions
' based on the values of mcevars_b (proxies for mce variables in _$_mod_b)
  if @wcount(%mcevars_f) > 0 then
    {\"_\$_mod_b\}.makegroup _\$_mcevars_b_sols {\"mcevars_b\}
    %mcevars_f1 = {%mcevars_f}
    for !ijj = 1 to @wcount(%mcevars_f1)
      %tmpa = @lower(@word(%mcevars_f1,!ijj))
      %tmpb = _$_mcevars_b_sols.@seriesname(!ijj)
      smpl %mceend + 8 %mceend + 8
       !tmpmean = @abs(@mean({%tmpa}))
      if !tmpmean > .001 then
         series _$\_tmpgrowth = @abs(@movav(d({\%tmpa},0,1)/{\%tmpa}(-1),8))
         series _{tmpgrowth} = 0
         endif
       !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth)
       if (!tmpscal < .001) then
         'stationary case
         smpl %mceend + 1 @last
         {\text{\tt \{\%tmpb\}}} = {\text{\tt \{\%tmpb\}}}(-1)
         else
         'nonstationary case
         smpl %mceend %mceend
         series _{\frac{1}{2}}tmpgrowth = _{\frac{1}{2}}movav(d({\frac{tmpb}{0.1}},0,1)/{\frac{tmpb}{0.1}},0)
         !tmpscal = @mean(_$_tmpgrowth) + 1
         smpl %mceend + 1 @last
         {\text{tmpb}} = {\text{tmpscal}} *{\text{tmpb}} (-1)
         endif
      smpl %mceend + 1 %mceend + 8
       {\text{mpa}} = {\text{mpb}}
      next
    endif
  mce_sim_text.append Terminal conditions set at iteration {!mcetry}
' once terminal conditions have been set once, turn the switch that
' calls this subroutine off
  %terminal = "no"
endsub
mcz_terminal, used in chunk 128.
```

```
140
      \langle set\ options\ based\ on\ defaults\ and\ overrides\ 140 \rangle \equiv
                                                                    (96)
        subroutine mcz_opt_setup(string mcz_opt_options, group mcz_opt_instrus, group mcz_op
          statusline mcz_opt_setup
        ' set up values of options based on defaults and overrides in string mcz_opt_options
          mcz_opt_options = @lower(mcz_opt_options)
          mcz_opt_options = @replace(mcz_opt_options," ","")
          mcz_opt_options = @replace(mcz_opt_options,","," ")
          mcz_opt_options = " " + mcz_opt_options + " "
        ' default values for options
          if %simtype <> "opttc" then
            !optmaxiter = 15
            !optconv = 1e-05
            else
            !optmaxiter = 50
            !optconv = 1e-06
            !tcdamp = 1
            endif
          !optlinemax = 10
          !optptrb = .01
          !opt_step_max = 1.0
          !optshow = 3
          !mceshow = 3
          %evlstart = %mcestart
          %drvstart = %mcestart
          %freq = @pagefreq
          %evlend = @datestr(@dateadd(@dateval(%evlstart),59,%freq))
          %drvend = @datestr(@dateadd(@dateval(%drvstart),39,%freq))
          %ideriv = "yes"
          %xopen = "yes"
          %xclose = "yes"
        ' if imposing constraints (mcz_opt_qp)
          %qpswitch = "r"
        ' are there overrides to defaults?
```

if @len(mcz_opt_options) > 0 then

```
%opts = "yes"
  else
  %opts = "no"
  endif
if %opts = "yes" then
  call mcz_equalopt("m",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !optmaxiter = @val(%temp)
    endif
  call mcz_equalopt("d",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !tcdamp = @val(%temp)
    endif
  call mcz_equalopt("c",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !optconv = @val(%temp)
    endif
  call mcz_equalopt("lmax",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !optlinemax = @val(%temp)
    endif
  call mcz_equalopt("p",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !optptrb = @val(%temp)
    endif
  call mcz_equalopt("stepmax",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !optstepmax = @val(%temp)
    endif
  call mcz_equalopt("oo",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    !optshow = @val(%temp)
    !mceshow = @val(%temp)
    endif
  call mcz_equalopt("lstart",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    %evlstart = @lower(%temp)
  call mcz_equalopt("lend",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    %evlend = @lower(%temp)
    endif
  call mcz_equalopt("istart",mcz_opt_options)
  if @len(%temp)>0 then
    %drvstart = @lower(%temp)
```

```
endif
   call mcz_equalopt("iend",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %drvend = @lower(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("ideriv",mcz_opt_options)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     %ideriv = @lower(%temp)
     endif
   call mcz_hasopt("terminal",mcz_opt_options)
   if !hasflag = 1 then
     %terminal = "yes"
     endif
   call mcz_hasopt("matlab",mcz_opt_options)
   if !hasflag = 1 then
     %qpswitch = "matlab"
     endif
   call mcz_hasopt("/xopen",mcz_opt_options)
   if !hasflag = 1 then
     %xopen = "no"
     endif
   call mcz_hasopt("/xclose",mcz_opt_options)
   if !hasflag = 1 then
     %xclose = "no"
     endif
   endif
' Some preliminaries
' copy group subroutine arguments into objects with fixed names so that they can be
' easily accessed by other subroutines
 copy mcz_opt_instrus
                        _$_opt_instrus
 copy mcz_opt_targs
                        _$_opt_targs
 smpl %evlstart %evlend
 !nevl = @obssmpl
 smpl %drvstart %drvend
 !ndrv = @obssmpl
, ************
' Examine the inequality constraints, put them in a table,
```

' and, if necessary, augment the list of target variables to

```
' include all constraint variables
 if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
   svector _$_opt_cnstr = mcz_opt_cnstr.@svectornb
   !nconstraints = @rows(_$_opt_cnstr)
   if !nconstraints > 0 then
     table(1,1) _$_opt_cnstr_tab
     string _$_opt_cnstr_vars = " "
     call mcz_constraints(_$_opt_cnstr,_$_opt_cnstr_tab,_$_opt_cnstr_vars)
     %extra_targets = @wnotin(@upper(_$_opt_cnstr_vars),_$_opt_targs.@members)
     %extra_targets = @wunique(%extra_targets)
     !nextra = @wcount(%extra_targets)
     if !nextra > 0 then
       for !qq = 1 to !nextra
         %newtarg = @word(%extra_targets,!qq)
         _$_opt_targs.add {%newtarg}
         %newtarg_t = %newtarg + "_t"
         %newtarg_w = %newtarg + "_w"
         smpl @all
         series {%newtarg_t} = 0
         series {%newtarg_w} = 0
         next
       endif
     else
     @uiprompt("Error: The cnstr keyword is assigned to an empty text file")
     stop
     endif
   endif
' More preliminaries
  !noptinstrus = _$_opt_instrus.@count
  !nopttargs = _$_opt_targs.@count
 !topttargs = !nopttargs * !nevl
 !toptinstrus = !noptinstrus * !ndrv
 if !topttargs < !toptinstrus then</pre>
   statusline Error: more instruments than targets
   stop
   endif
 matrix _$_opt_ptrb_mat = @filledmatrix(!ndrv,!noptinstrus,!optptrb)
 vector(!optmaxiter+1) _$_opt_loss_vec
```

```
if %ideriv <> "no" then
   matrix _$_opt_der_mat = @filledmatrix(!toptinstrus,!topttargs,0)
   endif
 %opt_targ_names = _$_opt_targs.@members
 %opt_des_names = @wcross(%opt_targ_names,"_t")
 group _$_opt_des {%opt_des_names}
 smpl %evlstart %evlend
 matrix _$_opt_des_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_des))
' if number of instruments and targets is the same, the optimal loss is zero,
' shortcut formulas can be used, and weights are not necessary
 if !toptinstrus = !topttargs then
   !zero_loss = 1
   matrix _$_opt_wt_mat = @identity(!topttargs)
   else
   !zero_loss = 0
   smpl %evlstart %evlend
   %opt_wt_names = @wcross(%opt_targ_names,"_w")
   group _$_opt_wts {%opt_wt_names}
   matrix _$_opt_wt_mat = @makediagonal(@vec(@convert(_$_opt_wts)))
   endif
' text file
 text mce_opt_text
 if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
   mce_opt_text.append constrained optimization using {%qpswitch}: xopen = {%xopen
   mce_opt_text.append unconstrained optimization (EViews)
   endif
 if %simtype = "opt" then
   mce_opt_text.append optimization type = committment
   mce_opt_text.append simulation period: {%mcestart} - {%mceend}
   mce_opt_text.append loss evalation period: {%evlstart} - {%evlend}
   mce_opt_text.append instrument setting period: {%drvstart} - {%drvend}
   mce_opt_text.append max number of optimization iterations = !optmaxiter
   mce_opt_text.append max number of line search steps per iteration = !optlinemax
   endif
 if %simtype = "opttc" then
   mce_opt_text.append optimization type = time-consistent nash (discretion)
```

```
mce_opt_text.append first instrument setting period: {%drvstart}
   mce_opt_text.append first simulation period: {%mcestart} - {%mceend}
   mce_opt_text.append first loss evalation period: {%evlstart} - {%evlend}
   mce_opt_text.append last instrument setting period: {%drvend}
   mce_opt_text.append max number of backward-induction iterations = !optmaxiter
 mce_opt_text.append convergence criteria = !optconv
 mce_opt_text.append output control parameter = !optshow
 mce_opt_text.append compute instrument derivs? = {%ideriv}
 mce_opt_text.append instrument perturbation factor = !optptrb
' table of iteration-by-iteration statistics
 if @isobject("mce_opt_stats") then
   delete mce_opt_stats
   endif
 table(!optmaxiter+2,7) mce_opt_stats
 mce_opt_stats.setwidth(1:1) 5
 mce_opt_stats.setwidth(1:5) 12
 mce_opt_stats.setlines(a2:g2) +b
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,1,"iter")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,2,"f(x)")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,3,"step size")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,4,"convergence")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,2,4,"statistic")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,1,5,"linearity")
 setcell(mce_opt_stats,2,5,"statistic")
' call appropriate optimization subroutine
 if %simtype = "opt" and %cnstrflag = "no" then
   call mcz_opt
 if %simtype = "opt" and %cnstrflag = "yes" then
   call mcz_opt_qp
 if %simtype = "opttc" then
   call mcz_opt_tc
   endif
' spool
```

if @isobject("mce_opt_spool") then

delete mce_opt_spool

 $\verb|mcz-opt-qp| 151, \ and \ \verb|mcz-opt-tc| 156.$ 

endif

```
spool mce_opt_spool
    if %simtype = "opt" then
      mce_opt_spool.append mce_opt_stats
      mce_opt_spool.append mce_opt_text
      mce_opt_spool.name untitled01 mce_opt_stats
      mce_opt_spool.name untitled02 mce_opt_text
      endif
    if %simtype = "opttc" then
      mce_opt_spool.append mce_opt_text
      mce_opt_spool.name untitled01 mce_opt_text
      endif
    if !optshow <> 4 then
      show mce_opt_spool
      close mce_opt_stats
      endif
    if %cleanup = "yes" then
      delete(noerr) _$_*
      endif
    endsub
Defines:
 mcz_opt_setup, used in chunk 102.
Uses mcz_constraints 168, mcz_equalopt 116a, mcz_hasopt 116b, mcz_opt 147,
```

```
147
     \langle main\ unconstrained\ optimal\ control\ simulation\ 147 \rangle \equiv
                                                        (96)
       subroutine mcz_opt
       'Main subroutine for unconstrained optimal control simulations
       ' initialize counters and switches
        !opttry = 0
        %opt_converge = "no"
        !optnonlin = 0
        !optpchloss = 100
       ' initial solution
        smpl %mcestart %mceend
        !opt_step = 0
        !opt_step_prev = 0
        call mcz_opt_solve
        if !opttry = 0 and !optloss = 0 then
          %opt_converge = "yes"
          mce_opt_text.append At iteration {!opttry}, convergence
          endif
       ' iterate to minimize loss
        smpl %mcestart %mceend
        while !opttry <= !optmaxiter and %opt_converge = "no"
          !opttry = !opttry + 1
        , ******************
        ' compute instrument derivatives, hessian, gradient, direction, and
        ' predicted loss assuming the model is linear
          if (%ideriv <> "no" and (!opttry = 1 or @abs(!optnonlin) > .1)) then
           call mcz_opt_deriv
           endif
          if !zero_loss = 0 then
```

matrix _\$_opt_hess = 2*_\$_opt_der_mat*_\$_opt_wt_mat*@transpose(_\$_opt_der_mat)

frbuseview.nw 147

June 19, 2016

else

```
matrix _$_opt_hess = 2*@transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)
  if @issingular(_$_opt_hess) = 1 then
   %errstring = "Hessian is singular at iteration " + @str(!opttry)
    @uiprompt(%errstring)
   stop
   endif
 matrix _$_opt_hessinv = @inverse(_$_opt_hess)
 if !zero_loss = 0 then
   matrix _$_opt_grad = 2*_$_opt_der_mat*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec
   matrix _$_opt_grad = 2*_$_opt_gap_vec
    endif
 vector _$_opt_direction = _$_opt_hessinv*_$_opt_grad
 matrix _$_opt_gap_vec_p = _$_opt_gap_vec - @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat) * _$_opt_der_mat
  !optloss_p = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec_p)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec_p)
<sup>,</sup> ***********************
' solve model and compute loss
  !opt_step = !opt_step_max
  !opt_step_prev = 0
 call mcz_opt_solve
<sup>,</sup> **********************
' test for nonlinearity
' !optnonlin is the ratio of the actual to predicted percentage reduction in loss ?
' the closer the model is to being linear, the closer !optnonlin is to zero
  !ddloss = (_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry)-_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1))
 if !ddloss <> 0 then
    !optnonlin = (_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1)-!optloss_p) / !ddloss
    !optnonlin = 100
   endif
 mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,5) = !optnonlin
<sup>,</sup> **********************
' Search for a better a step size (Armijo condition and backtracking)
  !opt_loss_dderiv = -@transpose(_$_opt_grad)*_$_opt_direction
  !kk = .01
  !iarm = 0
 while (_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1) > _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry) + !kk*!opt_step*!op
   and !iarm < !optlinemax
    !iarm = !iarm + 1
   !opt_step_prev = !opt_step
    !opt_step = .5*!opt_step
   call mcz_opt_solve
```

wend

```
, ***********
' Test for convergence
 if !zero_loss = 1 then
 ' equal number of targets and controls, full rank derivative matrix
 ' => loss has to be less than !optconv
   mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,4) = _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1)
   if _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1) < !optconv then</pre>
     %opt_converge = "yes"
     endif
   else
  '!zero_loss = 0 => percentage change in loss from previous iteration has
 ' to be less than !optconv
   !optpchloss = 1-(_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1)/_$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry))
   mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,4) = !optpchloss
   if !optpchloss < !optconv then
     %opt_converge = "yes"
     mce_opt_text.append At iteration {!opttry}, convergence
     endif
   endif
 if !opttry = 1 and @abs(!optnonlin) < 1e-7 and !opt_step = 1 then
   %opt_converge = "yes"
   mce_opt_text.append At iteration 1, convergence assumed because model is linear
   endif
 if !opttry = !optmaxiter then
   mce_opt_text.append At iteration {!opttry}, no convergence in {!optmaxiter} iterations
   !continue = @uiprompt("Maximum number of optimization iterations reached: Continue execu
   if !continue = 2 then
     stop
     else
     %opt_converge = "yes"
     endif
   endif
 if !optshow <> 4 then
   show mce_opt_stats
   endif
 wend
```

endsub

Defines:

mcz_opt, used in chunk 140.
Uses mcz_opt_deriv 164 and mcz_opt_solve 166.

```
151
       \langle main\ optimal\ control\ simulation\ with\ inequality\ constraints\ 151 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (96)
         subroutine mcz_opt_qp
         ' Main subroutine for optimal control simulations with inequality constraints
         ' (requires either R or matlab)
         ' The original problem:
             choose x to minimize z = (y-y*)'W(y-y*)
             under the constraint Cy >= c
            where at each iteration the linearized relationship between
            the target variables (y) and instrument variables (x) is
            given by
             y = B'x + k
         ' The transformed problem: Solve out y
             choose x to minimize z = x'BWB'x + 2(k-y*)'WB'x + const
             under the constraint CB'x >= c - Ck
         ' The R command -- quadprog::solve.QP(D,d,A,b) -- solves
             min [0.5 * x' D x - d'x] with the constraint A'x >= b
         'The matlab command -- x = quadprog(D,d,A,b) -- solves
             min [0.5 * x' D x + d'x] with the constraint Ax <= b
                       R
                                      matlab
             D
                   2BWB'
                                      same
             ď,
                   2(k-y*)'WB'
                                     -2(k-y*)'WB'
                                     -CB,
             Α,
                   CB,
                   c-Ck
                                     -(c-Ck)
             where k = y - B'x
         <sup>,</sup> ******************************
         ' Create constraint matrices (C,c)— dimensions are based on the number
         ' of periods in which the instruments are set (!ndrv) not the number of
         ' periods in which the loss function is evaluated (!nevl)
           if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
```

```
matrix(!nevl * !nconstraints,!nevl*!nopttargs) _$_opt_cnstr_mat = 0
   matrix(!nevl * !nconstraints,1) _$_opt_cnstr_vec = 0
   for !i = 1 to !nconstraints
     !nterms = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,1))
     for !k = 1 to !nterms
      %var = @upper(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k))
      !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k+1))
      !j = @wfindnc(%opt_targ_names,%var)
      for !l = 1 to !nevl
        _{\text{s-opt\_cnstr\_mat}((!i-1)*!nevl+!l,(!j-1)*!nevl+!l)} = !coef
        next
      next
     for !1 = 1 to !nev1
       !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!nterms+2))
       _{\text{opt\_cnstr\_vec}((!i-1)*!nevl+!l)} = !coef
      next
     next
   else
   !nconstraints = 1
   matrix(!nevl,!nevl*!nopttargs) _$_opt_cnstr_mat = 0
   matrix(!nevl,1) _$_opt_cnstr_vec = 0
   endif
' initialize counters and switches
 !opttry = 0
 %opt_converge = "no"
 !optnonlin = 0
 !optpchloss = 100
 if %qpswitch = "r" and %xopen = "yes" then
   xopen(type=r, case=lower)
   endif
 if %qpswitch = "matlab" and %xopen = "yes" then
   xopen(type=m, case=lower)
   endif
' compute an initial solution, without reference to any constraints
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 !opt_step = 0
 !opt_step_prev = 0
```

call mcz_opt_solve

```
' iterate to minimize loss
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 while !opttry <= !optmaxiter and %opt_converge = "no"
   !opttry = !opttry + 1
 <sup>,</sup> **********************
 ' compute instrument derivatives
   if %ideriv <> "no" then
     call mcz_opt_deriv
     endif
  , *****************
 ' compute qp matrices
   smpl %drvstart %drvend
   vector _$_opt_instru_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_instrus))
   matrix _$_qp_k_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec-@transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)*_$_opt_instru_vec
   matrix qp_d_mat = 2 * _$_opt_der_mat * _$_opt_wt_mat * @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)
   matrix qp_d_vec = -2 * _$_opt_der_mat*@transpose(_$_opt_wt_mat) _
                     * (_$_qp_k_vec - _$_opt_des_vec)
   matrix qp_a_mat = @transpose(_$_opt_cnstr_mat * @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat))
   matrix qp_b_vec = _$_opt_cnstr_vec - _$_opt_cnstr_mat _
                    * (_$_qp_k_vec - _$_opt_des_vec)
   if !ndrv <> !nevl then
     qp_a_mat = @subextract(qp_a_mat,1,1,!ndrv,!ndrv)
     qp_b_vec = @subextract(qp_b_vec,1,1,!ndrv,1)
     endif
   xput qp_d_mat qp_a_mat qp_d_vec qp_b_vec
  , ***********
  , ******************
 ' R code
   if %qpswitch = "r" then
     if ((!ndrv = 1) and (!noptinstrus = 1)) then
       xrun "dim(qp_d_mat) <- c(1,1);"</pre>
       xrun "dim(qp_a_mat) <- c(1,1);"</pre>
       xrun "dim(qp_d_vec) <- c(1,1);"
       xrun "dim(qp_b_vec) <- c(1,1);"</pre>
```

```
endif
   xrun "QP.results <- quadprog::solve.QP(qp_d_mat,qp_d_vec,qp_a_mat,qp_b_vec);"</pre>
   xrun "r_xhat <- QP.results$solution;"</pre>
   xrun "r_xhat <- as.matrix(r_xhat);"</pre>
   xget(type = matrix, name = _$_qp_instru_vec) r_xhat
   endif
, *****************
, *****************
' matlab code
 if %qpswitch = "matlab" then
   xrun "qp_d_vec = -qp_d_vec;"
   xrun "qp_a_mat = -qp_a_mat';"
   xrun "qp_b_vec = -qp_b_vec;"
   xrun "aeq = [];"
   xrun "beq = [];"
   xrun "lb = [];"
   xrun "ub = [];"
   xrun "xx0 = [];"
   xrun "options = optimset('Algorithm', 'active-set', 'LargeScale', 'off');"
   xrun "matlab_xhat = quadprog(qp_d_mat,qp_d_vec,qp_a_mat,qp_b_vec,aeq,beq,lb,ub
   xget matlab_xhat
   %tmp = matlab_xhat.@type
   if %tmp = "SCALAR" then
     matrix(1,1) _$_qp_instru_vec = matlab_xhat
     matrix _$_qp_instru_vec = matlab_xhat
     delete matlab_xhat
     endif
   endif
<sup>,</sup> **********************
<sup>,</sup> **********************
' values of target variables in qp (linearized) solution
 matrix _$_qp_targ_vec = @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)*_$_qp_instru_vec + _$_qp_k_vec
' values of target variables in original model
 smpl %drvstart %drvend
 matrix _$_tt1 = @unvec(@vec(_$_qp_instru_vec),!ndrv)
 mtos(_$_tt1,_$_opt_instrus)
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 call mcz_sim(" ")
 smpl %evlstart %evlend
 matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
```

```
matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
      !optloss = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
      setcell(mce_opt_stats,!opttry+2,1,!opttry,0)
    ' convergence test is based on the maximum difference between
    ' the target variable values in the linearized and original models
      !conv_stat = @max(abs(_$_qp_targ_vec-_$_opt_targ_vec))
      mce_opt_stats(!opttry+2,2) = !optloss
      mce_opt_stats(!opttry+2,4) = !conv_stat
      if !optshow <> 4 then
         show mce_opt_stats
         endif
      if !conv_stat < !optconv then</pre>
         %opt_converge = "yes"
         else
         endif
      wend
    delete(noerr) qp_d_mat qp_a_mat qp_d_vec qp_b_vec
  endsub
Defines:
  mcz_opt_qp, used in chunks 100 and 140.
Uses \ \mathtt{mcz\_opt\_deriv} \ 164, \ \mathtt{mcz\_opt\_solve} \ 166, \ \mathrm{and} \ \mathtt{mcz\_sim} \ 119.
```

```
156
       \langle model\ consistent\ optimal\ time-consistent\ solution\ 156 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (96)
        subroutine mcz_opt_tc
        ' 1. For a linear model, this code finds the exact time-consistent solution;
             for a nonlinear model, the calculated solution is based on the
             linearization of the model as given by the derivatives of the target
             variables wrt the instrument variables along the baseline.
        ' 2. The basic data matrices include observations for (!nevl+!ndrv-1) periods,
             which is also the interval over which tracking adds are required.
        \dot{\ } 3. The simulation, derivative and evaluation periods are assumed to have the
             same starting date
        ' 4. The solution method is backward induction; if there are no inequality constrain
             the method executes in EViews (using matrices); if inequality constraints
             are present, the method executes in EViews if there is a single
             instrument and in Matlab or R (depending on the
             setting of a switch) if there are multiple instruments (which requires
             a quadratic programming algorithm),
        <sup>1</sup> ***************************
        ' Create constraint matrices (C,c) — dimensions are based on the fact that
        ' each policymaker sets the instruments for a single period
          if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
            matrix(!nconstraints,!nopttargs) _$_opt_cnstr_mat = 0
            matrix(!nconstraints,1) _$_opt_cnstr_vec = 0
            for !i = 1 to !nconstraints
               !nterms = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,1))
              for !k = 1 to !nterms
                %var = @upper(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k))
                 !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!k+1))
                 !j = @wfindnc(%opt_targ_names,%var)
                _$_opt_cnstr_mat(!i,!j) = !coef
                next
               !coef = @val(_$_opt_cnstr_tab(!i,2*!nterms+2))
               _$_opt_cnstr_vec(!i) = !coef
              next
             endif
```

^{&#}x27; initial solution, instrument derivatives, and data matrices

```
' initial simulation
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 if %terminal = "yes" then
   call mcz_sim("terminal")
   %terminal = "no"
   else
   call mcz_sim(" ")
   endif
 {\%_$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_opt_targs_sols {\%opt_targ_names}
 !ntot = !ndrv + !nevl - 1
' derivative matrices and submatrices
'_$_opt_der_mat (this is the basic matrix; tc_dmat is its transpose)
'tc_dmat
              effect of !ndrv periods of instruments on !ntot periods of targets
'tc_dmat_short effect of !ndrv periods of instruments on !nevl periods of targets
'tc_dmat1 effect of period 1 instrument on !nevl periods of targets
'tc_dmat2
                effect of period 1 instrument on period 1 targets
 if %ideriv <> "no" then
   !opttry = 1
   matrix _$_opt_der_mat = @filledmatrix(!toptinstrus,!nopttargs*!ntot,0)
   %evlend_b = %evlend
   %freq = @pagefreq
   !ntot1 = !ntot-1
   %evlend = @datestr(@dateadd(@dateval(%simstart),!ntot1,%freq))
   'call dateshift(%simstart, %evlend, !ntot-1)
   call mcz_opt_deriv
   %evlend = %evlend_b
   matrix tc_dmat = @transpose(_$_opt_der_mat)
   matrix tc_dmat_short = @filledmatrix(!nevl*!nopttargs,!ndrv*!noptinstrus,0)
   for !i = 1 to !toptinstrus
     for !j = 1 to !nopttargs
       !r1 = !ntot*(!j-1)+1
       !r2 = !r1 + !nev1 - 1
       matplace(tc_dmat_short,@subextract(tc_dmat,!r1,!i,!r2,!i),!nevl*(!j-1)+1,!i)
       next
     next
   matrix tc_dmat1 = @filledmatrix(!nevl*!nopttargs,!noptinstrus,0)
   for !i = 1 to !noptinstrus
     matplace(tc_dmat1,@columnextract(tc_dmat_short,(!i-1)*!ndrv+1),1,!noptinstrus)
   matrix tc_dmat2 = Ofilledmatrix(!noptinstrus,!nopttargs,0)
   for !i = 1 to !noptinstrus
     for !j = 1 to !nopttargs
       tc_{dmat2}(!i,!j) = tc_{dmat1}((!j-1)*!nevl+1,!i)
```

```
next
     next
   endif
' initial simulation again (is this necessary)
 call mcz_sim(" ")
' data matrices
 smpl %simstart {%evlend} + !ndrv - 1
 stom(_$_opt_targs_sols,tc_ymat)
 stom(_$_opt_des,tc_ystarmat)
 stom(_$_opt_instrus,tc_xmat)
 matrix tc_wmat = _$_opt_wt_mat
' (no constraints) => eviews;
' (1 constraint -- single period) => eviews
' (multiple constraints) => R or Matlab
 if %cnstrflag = "no" then
   %iii = "eviews"
   else
   if !noptinstrus = 1 then
     %iii = "eviews"
     else
     %iii = %qpswitch
     endif
   endif
 scalar tc_iter = 0
 scalar tc_stat = 100
 scalar tc_itmax = !optmaxiter
 scalar tc_conv = !optconv
' unconstrained backward induction => EViews
 if %cnstrflag = "no" then
   while (tc_stat > tc_conv) and tc_iter <= tc_itmax</pre>
     matrix tc_xb = tc_xmat
     matrix tc_yb = tc_ymat
     for !i = !ndrv to 1 step -1
       !n1 = !i+!nevl-1
       !n2 = !i+!ndrv-1
       vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
```

vector tc_ys0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ystarmat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))

```
vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
      vector tc_x0_1v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!i,!noptinstrus))
      vector tc_xbv = @vec(@subextract(tc_xb,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
      vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat_short*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
      matrix tc_g = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*(tc_y1v-tc_ys0v)
      matrix tc_h = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*tc_dmat1
      vector tc_x1_1v = tc_x0_1v - !tcdamp*@inverse(tc_h)*tc_g
      matrix tc_x1_1 = @unvec(tc_x1_1v,!noptinstrus)
      matplace(tc_xmat,tc_x1_1,!i,1)
      next
    vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,1,1,!ndrv,!noptinstrus))
    vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,1,1,!ntot,!nopttargs))
    vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
    matrix tc_y1 = @unvec(tc_y1v,!ntot)
    matplace(tc_ymat,tc_y1,1,1)
    tc_iter = tc_iter + 1
    if tc_iter > 1 then
      tc_stat = @max(@abs(tc_xmat-tc_xmatprev))
      endif
    matrix tc_xmatprev = tc_xmat
    wend
   endif
' constrained backward induction
 if %cnstrflag = "yes" then
   matrix tc_cmat = _$_opt_cnstr_mat
   matrix tc_cvec = _$_opt_cnstr_vec
 ' single-period constraint => eviews
   if %iii = "eviews" then
    statusline constrained TC optimization in EViews
    matrix mat_a = tc_dmat2*@transpose(tc_cmat)
```

```
while (tc_stat > tc_conv) and tc_iter <= tc_itmax</pre>
 matrix tc_xb = tc_xmat
 matrix tc_yb = tc_ymat
  for !i = !ndrv to 1 step -1
    !n1 = !i+!nevl-1
    !n2 = !i+!ndrv-1
  ' vectors of observations in the current loss and instrument periods
    vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
    vector tc_ys0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ystarmat,!i,1,!n1,!nopttargs))
    vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
    vector tc_x0_1v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,!i,1,!i,!noptinstrus))
    vector tc_xbv = @vec(@subextract(tc_xb,!i,1,!n2,!noptinstrus))
  ' vector of target variable values based on current instrument values
  ' (ie, solve model)
    vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat_short*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
  ' unconstrained current optimal instrument value
    matrix tc_g = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*(tc_y1v-tc_ys0v)
    matrix tc_h = @transpose(tc_dmat1)*tc_wmat*tc_dmat1
    vector tc_x1_1v = tc_x0_1v - @inverse(tc_h)*tc_g
  ' check constraint
    matrix tc_y1m = @unvec(tc_y1v,!nev1)
    matrix tc_ysm = @unvec(tc_ys0v,!nevl)
    matrix mattemp = @rowextract(tc_y1m,1) - (@transpose(tc_x0_1v)*tc_dmat2) -
    matrix mat_b = tc_cvec - tc_cmat*@transpose(mattemp)
    scalar testit = @sum(mat_b)/@sum(mat_a)
    if @sum(tc_x1_1v) < testit then
     tc_x1_1v = testit
      !tc_iter = tc_iter
      endif
    vector tc_x1_1v = (1-!tcdamp)*tc_x0_1v + !tcdamp* tc_x1_1v
  ' place current optimal instrument value in instrument matrix
    matrix tc_x1_1 = @unvec(tc_x1_1v,!noptinstrus)
    matplace(tc_xmat,tc_x1_1,!i,1)
    next
```

' solve model

```
vector tc_x0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_xmat,1,1,!ndrv,!noptinstrus))
     vector tc_y0v = @vec(@subextract(tc_ymat,1,1,!ntot,!nopttargs))
     vector tc_y1v = tc_y0v + tc_dmat*(tc_x0v-tc_xbv)
     matrix tc_y1 = @unvec(tc_y1v,!ntot)
     matplace(tc_ymat,tc_y1,1,1)
     tc_iter = tc_iter + 1
     if tc_iter > 1 then
       tc_stat = @max(@abs(tc_xmat-tc_xmatprev))
       endif
     matrix tc_xmatprev = tc_xmat
     wend
   endif
' multiple constraints => R or matlab
 if %iii = "r" or %iii = "matlab" then
   scalar tc_noptinstrus = !noptinstrus
   scalar tc_nopttargs = !nopttargs
   scalar tc_nevl = !nevl
   scalar tc_ndrv = !ndrv
   scalar tc_damp = !tcdamp
   if %xopen = "yes" then
     if %iii = "r" then
       xopen(type=r)
       xrun library("quadprog")
       %wd = """" + %rpath + """"
       xrun setwd({%wd})
       else
       xopen(type=m)
       xrun addpath {%mpath}
       endif
     endif
   xput tc_ymat tc_ystarmat tc_xmat tc_wmat tc_cmat tc_cvec
   xput tc_nopttargs tc_noptinstrus tc_nevl tc_ndrv tc_itmax tc_conv
   xput tc_dmat tc_dmat1 tc_dmat2 tc_dmat_short tc_damp
   if %iii = "r" then
     xrun source("tcoc_r.R")
```

```
else
       xrun tcoc_m
       endif
     xget tc_xmat
     xget tc_ymat
     xget tc_iter
     !tc_iter = tc_iter
     if %xclose = "yes" then
       xclose
       endif
     delete(noerr) tc_ystarmat tc_dmat tc_wmat tc_cmat tc_cvec
     delete(noerr) tc_nopttargs tc_noptinstrus tc_nevl tc_ndrv tc_conv
     delete(noerr) tc_damp tc_dmat1 tc_dmat2 tc_dmatshort
     endif
   endif
' examine linearized solution
 if tc_iter >= tc_itmax then
   @uiprompt("iteration limit reached: time-consistent iterations did not converge
   'stop
   endif
' write instrument and target values back into their corresponding series
 smpl %evlstart {%evlstart} + !nevl + !ndrv - 2
 mtos(tc_xmat,_$_opt_instrus)
 mtos(tc_ymat,_$_opt_targs_sols)
' value of loss function for linearized solution
 smpl %evlstart %evlend
 matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
 matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
 !optloss_lin = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
 stom(_$_opt_targs_sols,tc_ymat_lin)
' simulate EViews model
 smpl %mcestart %mceend
 call mcz_sim(" ")
 smpl %evlstart %evlend
 stom(_$_opt_targs_sols,tc_ymat_ev)
 !maxdiff = @max(@abs(tc_ymat_ev-tc_ymat_lin))
```

```
matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
    matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
    !optloss_ev = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
    !tciter = tc_iter
    mce_opt_text.append time-consistent solution
    mce_opt_text.append --- backward-induction iterations = !tciter
    mce_opt_text.append --- TC damping factor = !tcdamp
    mce_opt_text.append --- linearized solution loss = !optloss_lin
    mce_opt_text.append --- EViews solution loss = !optloss_ev
    mce_opt_text.append --- max diff btwn target vars in linear and EViews sols = !maxdiff
    delete(noerr) tc_ymat tc_xmat tc_iter tc_ymat_lin tc_ymat_ev
    delete(noerr) tc_itmax tc_stat
 endsub
Defines:
 mcz_opt_tc, used in chunks 100 and 140.
Uses dateshift 88, mcz_opt_deriv 164, and mcz_sim 119.
```

```
164
      \langle compute\ derivatives\ of\ loss\ function\ targets\ wrt\ instruments\ 164 \rangle \equiv
                                                                      (96)
        subroutine mcz_opt_deriv
        ' requires that the following be defined
        '!optshow, mce_opt_stats, %evlstart, %evlend
        '_$_opt_targs_sols, !noptinstrus, _$_opt_instrus, !drv,
        '_$_opt_ptrb_mat, _$_opt_der_mat
        ' This subroutine computes the derivatives of the loss function targets wrt the inst:
          smpl @all
          !optshow_bac = !optshow
          !optshow = 3
          'make a copy of the current values of the mce instruments;
          'they will be restored after each derivative is computed
          smpl %mcestart %mceend
          stom(_$_mce_instrus,_$_instrus_bac)
          'do not reset terminal conditions when computing derivatives
          %set_terminal = "no"
          smpl %evlstart %evlend
          matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
          'derivatives loop
          statusline computing instrument derivatives at optimization iteration !opttry
          for !zi = 1 to !noptinstrus
            %instru_name = _$_opt_instrus.@seriesname(!zi)
            for !zj = 1 to !ndrv
              !perturbit = _$_opt_ptrb_mat(!zj,!zi)
              smpl %mcestart + !zj-1 %mcestart + !zj-1
              {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} + !perturbit
              call mcz_sim(" ")
              smpl %evlstart %evlend
              matrix _$_opt_targ_dvec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
              matplace(_$_opt_der_mat,@transpose(_$_opt_targ_dvec-_$_opt_targ_vec)/!perturbi
              smpl %mcestart + !zj-1 %mcestart + !zj-1
              {%instru_name} = {%instru_name} - !perturbit
              'restore the original values of the add factors on
              'the z variable equations
              smpl %mcestart %mceend
              mtos(_$_instrus_bac,_$_mce_instrus)
```

next

 ${\tt next}$ 

smpl %mcestart %mceend

!optshow = !optshow_bac

 $\verb"endsub"$ 

Defines:

 ${\tt mcz_opt_deriv},$  used in chunks 147, 151, and 156. Uses  ${\tt mcz_sim}$  119.

```
166
      \langle solve\ model\ consistent\ expectations\ model\ 166 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (96)
         subroutine mcz_opt_solve
         ' This subroutine first sets the instrument values, based on the current
         ' optimal direction and choice of step size, and then solves the model
          statusline optimization solution, iteration !opttry
          smpl %mcestart %mceend
           'compute instrument values based on current direction and step size
          if !opttry > 0 then
            mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,3) = !opt_step
             smpl %drvstart %drvend
             for !i = 1 to !noptinstrus
               vector _$_temp_adj = @subextract(_$_opt_direction,(!i-1)*!ndrv+1,1,!i*!ndrv,1)
               mtos(_$_temp_adj,_$_temp_ser)
               %y1 = _$_opt_instrus.@seriesname(!i)
               \{\%y1\} = \{\%y1\} - (!opt_step_!opt_step_prev)*_$_temp_ser
               next
             endif
           'solve model
          if !opttry = 0 and %terminal = "yes" then
            call mcz_sim("terminal")
            %terminal = "no"
            else
            call mcz_sim(" ")
             endif
          if !opttry = 0 then
             {%_$_mod_b}.makegroup _$_opt_targs_sols {%opt_targ_names}
             endif
           'compute value of loss function
          smpl %evlstart %evlend
          matrix _$_opt_targ_vec = @vec(@convert(_$_opt_targs_sols))
          matrix _$_opt_gap_vec = _$_opt_targ_vec - _$_opt_des_vec
           !optloss = @sum(@transpose(_$_opt_gap_vec)*_$_opt_wt_mat*_$_opt_gap_vec)
          setcell(mce_opt_stats,!opttry+3,1,!opttry,0)
          mce_opt_stats(!opttry+3,2) = !optloss
          _$_opt_loss_vec(!opttry+1) = !optloss
          if !optshow = 2 then
            show mce_opt_stats
            endif
```

## endsub

Defines:

mcz_opt_solve, used in chunks 147 and 151. Uses mcz_sim 119.

```
168
      \langle convert\ mcz\ inequality\ constraints\ 168 \rangle \equiv
                                                                        (96)
        subroutine local mcz_constraints(svector sss, table ctable, string cvarnames)
        'This subroutine converts the inequality constraint text into a table
        ' subroutine arguments:
        ' inputs:
            SSS
                                svector of constraint text
        ' outputs:
            _$_opt_cnstr_tab
                                   table of constraint variables and coefficients
                                   string of names of variables in constraints
            _$_opt_cnstr_vars
        <sup>,</sup> *****************************
          !nconstraints = @rows(sss)
          scalar loc
          scalar sign
          for !i = 1 to !nconstraints
            %rrr = sss(!i)
           , *****************************
           <sup>,</sup> ******************************
           ' separate the left and right sides of each constraint
            !kk1 = @instr(%rrr,">=")
            if !kk1 = 0 then
              @uiprompt("each constraint must contain an "">="" term")
              stop
              endif
            %rrrl = @left(%rrr,!kk1-1)
            if @isempty(%rrrl) = 1 then
              @uiprompt("each constraint must contain terms to the left of "">=""")
              stop
              endif
            %rrrr = @mid(%rrr,!kk1+2)
            if @isempty(%rrrr) = 1 then
              @uiprompt("each constraint must contain a value to the right of "">=""")
              stop
              endif
```

```
<sup>,</sup> *******************************
<sup>,</sup> ******************************
' process the left side of each constraint
' 1. split %rrrl into individual terms (based on + and - characters);
    the main challenge concerns the first term, which may or may not
    have a leading + or - attached
' 2. then split each term into 2 parts (based on * character)
' 3. then identify which part is coefficient and which is variable
  !zz = 0
             'flag to indicate end of left hand side of a constraint
  !nterms = 1
 vector(100) split_locs = 0
 vector(100) split_signs = 0
 %rrrlx = %rrrl
' find boundaries and signs of each term
 while !zz = 0
  ' first term: determine whether its sign is explicit or implicit
   if !nterms = 1 then
     call find_next_delimit(%rrrlx,loc,sign)
     if loc = 0 then
                                       'implicit leading sign
        split_locs(!nterms) = 0
        split_signs(!nterms) = 1
        else
        %rrrll = @left(%rrrlx,loc-1)
        if @isempty(%rrrll) = 1 then
                                       'explicit leading sign
          split_locs(!nterms) = loc
          split_signs(!nterms) = sign
          %rrrlx = @mid(%rrrlx,loc+1)
          else
                                       'implicit leading sign
          split_locs(!nterms) = 0
          split_signs(!nterms) = 1
          endif
        endif
      endif
   call find_next_delimit(%rrrlx,loc,sign)
    if loc = 0 then
                                     'last term
     split_locs(!nterms+1) = @length(%rrrlx)
      !zz = 1
     else
      split_locs(!nterms+1) = loc
     split_signs(!nterms+1) = sign
```

```
%rrrlx = @mid(%rrrlx,loc+1)
     endif
   !nterms = !nterms + 1
   wend
 for !k = 2 to !nterms
   split_locs(!k) = split_locs(!k-1) + split_locs(!k)
   next
  !nterms = !nterms - 1
' parse each term into coefficient times variable (they must
'appear in that order, although coefficients = 1 can be
' omitted), and store coefficient and variable in ctable
 for !k = 1 to !nterms
   %term = @mid(%rrrl,split_locs(!k)+1,split_locs(!k+1)-split_locs(!k)-1)
   if @isempty(%term) = 1 then
     @uiprompt("term is empty: illegal constraint specification")
     stop
     else
     !ii = @instr(%term,"*")
     if !ii > 0 then
       %coef = @left(%term,!ii-1)
       !coef = split_signs(!k) * @val(%coef)
       %var = @mid(%term,!ii+1)
       else
       !coef = split_signs(!k)
       %var = %term
       endif
     %var = @trim(%var)
     endif
   ctable(!i,2*!k) = %var
   ctable(!i,2*!k+1) = !coef
   cvarnames = cvarnames + " " + %var
   next
<sup>,</sup> ***********************************
, ********************************
' process the right side of each constraint
 ctable(!i,2*!nterms+2) = @val(%rrrr)
 ctable(!i,1) = !nterms
```

```
June 19, 2016 frbuseview.nw 171
```

```
next
             cvarnames = @wunique(cvarnames)
           endsub
        Defines:
          mcz_constraints, used in chunk 140.
        Uses find_next_delimit 171b.
171a
        \langle shift\ left\ 171a \rangle \equiv
                                                                                  (96)
          subroutine local shiftleft(vector abc, scalar nshift)
             !rows = @rows(abc)
             vector v1 = @subextract(abc,1,1,nshift,1)
             vector v2 = @subextract(abc,nshift+1,1,!rows,1)
             matplace(abc, v2,1)
             matplace(abc,v1,!rows - nshift + 1)
          endsub
        Defines:
          shiftleft, used in chunk 119.
171b
        \langle find \ next \ delimiter \ 171b \rangle \equiv
          subroutine local find_next_delimit(string %instring,scalar loc,scalar sign)
             !ttp = @instr(%instring,"+")
             !ttm = @instr(%instring,"-")
             if !ttp= 0 or !ttm = 0 then
               loc = !ttp + !ttm
               if !ttp = 0 and !ttm = 0 then
                 sign = 1
                 else
                 sign = (!ttp > 0) - (!ttm > 0)
                 endif
               else
               loc = !ttp*(!ttp < !ttm) + !ttm*(!ttm < !ttp)</pre>
               sign = (!ttp < !ttm) - (!ttm < !ttp)</pre>
             endif
           endsub
        Defines:
          find_next_delimit, used in chunk 168.
```

```
172
       \langle load\ frbus\ with\ transformed\ subsidiary\ model\ 172 \rangle \equiv
                                                                          (96)
           subroutine mce_load_frbus(string frbus_opts)
         ' take two corresponding FRB/US models (eg, stdver and pfver) and make
         ' the transformations needed to the second model so that the pair of
         ' models can be used with the mcz_solve_subs programs
         ' parameters
             required: mce_vars, mod_b, mod_f, path_b, path_f
             optional: allbut, only
           !allbut = 0
           !only = 0
           frbus_opts = @lower(frbus_opts)
           frbus_opts = @replace(frbus_opts," ","")
           frbus_opts = @replace(frbus_opts,","," ")
           frbus_opts = " " + frbus_opts + " "
           if @isempty(frbus_opts) = 0 then
             call mcz_equalopt("mce_vars",frbus_opts)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               %mce_vars = @lower({%temp})
               else
               @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the mce_vars argument")
               stop
               endif
             call mcz_equalopt("mod_b",frbus_opts)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               \mbox{\em mod_b} = {\mbox{\em temp}}
               @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the mod_b argument")
               stop
               endif
             call mcz_equalopt("mod_f",frbus_opts)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               \mbox{mod}_f = {\%temp}
               @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the mod_f argument")
               stop
               endif
             call mcz_equalopt("path_b",frbus_opts)
             if @len(%temp)>0 then
               %path_b = {%temp}
               else
```

```
@uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the path_b argument")
     stop
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("path_f",frbus_opts)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
     path_f = {\text{wtemp}}
     else
     @uiprompt("Error: mce_load_frbus sub requires the path_f argument")
     endif
   call mcz_equalopt("allbut",frbus_opts)
   if @len(%temp)>0 then
      !allbut = 1
     %allbut = {%temp}
     call mcz_equalopt("only",frbus_opts)
     if @len(%temp)>0 then
       !only = 1
       %only = {%temp}
       endif
     endif
   endif
' Added so that users may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations instead of
' passing in a list that may change in the future.
' Model consistent Asset Pricing
 %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10 zpib5 zpic58'
' Wages and prices
 %s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "
' Others - all PAC expectations
 %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxnfbd zxnfbs zxnfbi zyh zyhp zyht
 if %mce_vars = "-all" then
   %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
 if %mce_vars = "-mcap" then
   %mce_vars = %s_mcap
   endif
 if %mce_vars = "-wp" then
   %mce_vars = %s_wp
   endif
 if %mce_vars = "-mcap+wp" then
   %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp
```

```
endif
    if @left(%mce_vars, 7) = "-allbut" then
     %tmp = %mce_vars
     %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
     %mce_vars = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
      endif
    string zvar_list = %mce_vars
    %zvars = %mce_vars
  ' backward-looking model
    ld_frbus_cfs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b)
    if !allbut = 1 then
      %tmp = "allbut " + %allbut
      ld_some_eqs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b,eqnames=%tmp)
      endif
    if !only = 1 then
      %tmp = %only
      ld_some_eqs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b,eqnames=%tmp)
    if !allbut = 0 and !only = 0 then
     ld_frbus_eqs(modelname=%mod_b,modelpath=%path_b)
      endif
  ' model with mce equations and errors
    ld_mce_eqs(pfname=%mod_f,pfpath=%path_f,mcename=%mod_f,mceeqs=%mce_vars)
    ld_mce_cfs(pfname=%mod_f,pfpath=%path_f,mceeqs=%mce_vars)
    !nmcevars = @wcount(%mce_vars)
    %evars = @wcross("e",%mce_vars)
    for !i = 1 to !nmcevars
      %tmp = @word(%mce_vars,!i)
      %tmpw = "w" + @mid(%tmp,2)
      if %tmp \iff "zyh" and %tmp \iff "zyhp" and %tmp \iff "zyht" then
        %tmp1 = @word(%evars,!i) + "=" + @word(%mce_vars,!i) + "-" + %tmpw
        %tmp1 = @word(%evars,!i) + "= log(" + @word(%mce_vars,!i) + "/" + %tmpw + ")"
        endif
      {\mod_f}.append {\mod_f}
      next
 endsub
Defines:
 mce_load_frbus, used in chunks 32, 42, 48, 57, and 100.
```

 $Uses \verb|ld_frbus_cfs| 11a | 11b, \verb|ld_frbus_eqs| 12b | 13, \verb|ld_mce_cfs| 14b | 15, \verb|ld_mce_eqs| 17 | 18, \\ \verb|ld_some_eqs| 22 | 23, and mcz_equalopt| 116a.$ 

```
176
      \langle create \ wage \ and \ expectation \ variables \ in \ forward \ looking \ model \ 176 \rangle \equiv
                                                                         (96)
           subroutine make_frbus_mcevars(string frbus_mcevars)
         ' Create data for the w and e variables in the operational forward looking
         ' model over the workfile sample currently in effect
        ' The input string contains the names of the expectations variables that
         ' are to have MC solutions
          %mce_vars = frbus_mcevars
         ' The user may ask directly for a group of forward-looking equations instead of
         ' passing in a list that may change in the future.
         ' Model consistent Asset Pricing
          %s_mcap = " zdivgr zgap05 zgap10 zpi10f zpic30 zrff10 zrff5 zgap30 zrff30 zpi10 zp:
         ' Wages and prices
          %s_wp = " zpicxfe zpieci "
         ' Others - all PAC expectations
          %s_other = " zecd zeco zeh zgapc2 zlhp zpi5 zvpd zvps zvpi zxnfbd zxnfbs zxnfbi zyl
          if %mce_vars = "-all" then
            %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other
             endif
          if %mce_vars = "-mcap" then
             %mce_vars = %s_mcap
             endif
           if %mce_vars = "-wp" then
            %mce_vars = %s_wp
           if %mce_vars = "-mcap+wp" then
             %mce_vars = %s_mcap + %s_wp
             endif
           if @left(%mce_vars, 7) = "-allbut" then
            %tmp = %mce_vars
             %s_remove = @replace(%tmp, "-allbut", "")
            %mce_vars = @wnotin(%s_mcap + %s_wp + %s_other, %s_remove)
             endif
         ' Data for extra variables associated with MC expectations
          smpl @all
          for !i = 1 to @wcount(%mce_vars)
            %tmp = @word(%mce_vars,!i)
```

```
%wtmp = "w" + @mid(%tmp,2)
%wtmp_aerr = %wtmp + "_aerr"
%etmp = "e" + @word(%mce_vars,!i)
series {%wtmp} = {%tmp}
series {%wtmp_aerr} = 0
series {%etmp} = 0
next
```

## endsub

## Defines:

make_frbus_mcevars, used in chunks 32, 42, 48, 57, and 100.

## A.20 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg

```
178
    \langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg 178 \rangle \equiv
      ' This example illustrates:
         - The automated approach to constructing the two operational
         - How to define the multiplier shock in a text
          file whose lines are executed from within the call to
          mce_run
         - How to declare the model scenario and the scenario
          scenario alias within the call to mce_run
        - The use of the "linear" option of the "newton" algorithm
          for a linear model in which the maximum endogenous lead and
          lag is one period
      ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range
       include mce_solve_library
      ' Workfile
       %wfstart = "2000q1"
       %wfend = "2100q4"
       %mainpage = "main"
       wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
      ' Model name
       %mod = "simple"
      ' Simulation range
       %simstart = "2001q1"
       %simend = "2025q4"
      ' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
      ' equations
       model {%mod}
       {\mbox{\mbox{(mod)}}}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*pinf(1)+ cp(2) * ygap
```

```
{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}mod}}.append rate = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)
 {\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}mod}}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*ygap(1) + cy(2) * (rate - pinf(1))
' coefficients
 coef(2) cy
 cy.fill .50, -.02
 coef(2) cp
 cp.fill .50, .02
 coef(3) cr
 cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
 smpl @all
 %vars = {%mod}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
   %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
   series \{\%tmp\} = 0
   next
' Section 3: Simulation
 text shock1
 shock1.append smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 shock1.append series rate_a = rate_a + 1
 %mopts = "create,mod=%mod,adds,track"
 %aopts = "jinit=linear"
 %sopts = "type=single,txt=shock1,scen,suf=_1"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
 copy mce_sim_spool mce_sim_spool_1
 show mce_sim_spool_1
 series zero = 0
 smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 graph gr1.line zero rate_1 pinf_1 ygap_1
 gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive interest rate shock"
 show gr1
```

This code is written to file  ${\tt srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg}$ . Defines:

example1, used in chunk 10.
Uses mce_run 102 and mce_solve_library 95 194.

#### A.21 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg

```
181
    \langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg 181 \rangle \equiv
      ' This example illustrates:
         - A manual approach to constructing the two operational
          models that mimics what the automated approach does
         - How to define the multiplier shock in a text
          file whose lines are executed from within the call to
          mce_run
         - How to declare the model scenario and the scenario
         scenario alias within the call to mce_run
        - The use of the "linear" option of the "newton" algorithm
          for a linear model in which the maximum endogenous lead and
          lag is one period
      ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range
       include mce_solve_library
      ' Workfile
       %wfstart = "2000q1"
       %wfend = "2100q4"
       %mainpage = "main"
       wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
      ' Model names
       %modb = "simpleb"
       %modf = "simplef"
      ' Simulation range
       %simstart = "2001q1"
       %simend = "2025q4"
      ' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
      ' equations in backward-looking model
```

model {%modb}

```
{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mathsf{M}}}}append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*zpinf+ cp(2) * ygap
 {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}}}.append rate = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)}
 {\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*zygap + cy(2) * (rate - zpinf)
' equations in expectations errors model
 model {%modf}
 {\modf}.append ezpinf = zpinf - pinf(1)
 {\modf}.append ezygap = zygap - ygap(1)
' coefficients
 coef(2) cy
 cy.fill .50, -.02
 coef(2) cp
 cp.fill .50, .02
 coef(3) cr
 cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
 smpl @all
 %vars = {%modb}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
   %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
   series \{\%tmp\} = 0
   next
 %vars = {%modf}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
   %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
   series \{\%tmp\} = 0
   next
' declare mce variables and instruments
 %instrus = "zpinf zygap"
 %errs = "ezpinf ezygap"
' Section 3: Simulation
 text shock1
 shock1.append smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 shock1.append series rate_a = rate_a + 1
```

```
%mopts = "mod_b=%modb,mod_f=%modf,mce_instrus=%instrus,mce_errs=%errs,adds,track"
%aopts = "jinit=linear"
%sopts = "type=single,txt=shock1,scen,suf=_1"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
copy mce_sim_spool mce_sim_spool_1
show mce_sim_spool_1

series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr1.line zero rate_1 pinf_1 ygap_1
gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive interest rate shock"
show gr1
```

This code is written to file srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg. Defines:
example2, used in chunk 10.

Uses mce_run 102 and mce_solve_library 95 194.

## A.22 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg

184  $\langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg \ 184 \rangle \equiv$ ' This example illustrates: - Another manual approach to constructing the two operational models that introduces new endogenous variables for the expectations leads along with simple equations for the new endogenous variables. - The MCE instruments are the add factors on the equations for the new endogenous variables; this circumstance requires that add factors be assigned to the operational models prior to the call to mce_run. - The option of defining the multiplier shock in commands that are executed prior to the call to mce_run, when the manual approach is used. - The option of declaring model scenarios and the scenario scenario alias prior to the call to mce_run, when the manual approach is used. - The model no longer satisfies the conditions for which the "jinit=linear" option of the "newton" algorithm is designed. This example uses "jinit=interp(4)" to specify a particular approximate Jacobian. - This example runs three simulations. In the second and third simulations, the assignment of null strings to the first two arguments of the mce_run subroutine causes the simulations to be run with the same internal models and algorithm (including the Newton MCE Jacobian) that were created or declared in the first simulation. ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range include mce_solve_library ' Workfile %wfstart = "2000q1" %wfend = "2100q4"%mainpage = "main" wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend} , Model names

%modb = "simpleb"

```
%modf = "simplef"
' Simulation range
 %simstart = "2001q1"
 %simend = "2025q4"
' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
' equations in backward-looking model
 model {%modb}
 {\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*zpinf+ cp(2) * ygap
 {\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}.append rate = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)}
 {\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*zygap + cy(2) * (rate - zpinf)
 {\modb}.append zpinf = @movav(pinf(-1),4)
 {\modb}.append zygap = @movav(ygap(-1),4)
' equations in expectations errors model
 model {%modf}
 {%modf}.append ezpinf = zpinf - pinf(1)
 {\modf}.append ezygap = zygap - ygap(1)
' coefficients
 coef(2) cy
 cy.fill .50, -.02
 coef(2) cp
 cp.fill .50, .02
 coef(3) cr
 cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
 smpl @all
 %vars = {%modb}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
   %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
   series \{\%tmp\} = 0
   next
 %vars = {%modf}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
   %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
```

```
series \{\%tmp\} = 0
   next
' declare mce variables and instruments
 %instrus = "zpinf_a zygap_a"
 %errs = "ezpinf ezygap"
' assign tracking add factors
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%modb}.addassign @all
 {%modb}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%modf}.addassign @all
 {%modf}.addinit(v=n) @all
' Section 3: Simulations
 %sufm = "_1"
 {%modb}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"
 {%modf}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"
' Sim 1: interest rate shock
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 rate_a = rate_a + 1
 %mopts = "mod_b=%modb,mod_f=%modf,mce_instrus=%instrus,mce_errs=%errs"
 %aopts = "jinit=interp(4)"
 %sopts = "type=single"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 rate_a = rate_a - 1
 series zero = 0
 smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 graph gr1.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
 gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive interest rate shock"
 show gr1
```

' Sim 2: output gap shock

```
smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 ygap_a = ygap_a + 1
 %mopts = ""
 %aopts = ""
 %sopts = "type=single"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 ygap_a = ygap_a - 1
 series zero = 0
 smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 graph gr2.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
 gr2.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive output gap shock"
 show gr2
' Sim 3: inflation shock
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 pinf_a = pinf_a + 1
 %mopts = ""
 %aopts = ""
 %sopts = "type=single"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
 smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 pinf_a = pinf_a - 1
 series zero = 0
 smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
 graph gr3.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
 gr3.addtext(t,c,font(14)) "Positive inflation shock"
 show gr3
```

This code is written to file srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg. Defines:

example3, used in chunk 10.

Uses  ${\tt mce_run}\ 102$  and  ${\tt mce_solve_library}\ 95\ 194.$ 

#### A.23 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg

```
188
     \langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg \ 188 \rangle \equiv
       ' This example illustrates:
          - The simulation of a nonlinear model (zero bound imposed)
            (because the baseline data is set to zero; the zero-bound
            is set illustratively to -1)
          - The use of the qnewton algorithm
       ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range
        include mce_solve_library
       ' Workfile
        %wfstart = "2000q1"
        %wfend = "2100q4"
        %mainpage = "main"
        wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
       ' Model names
        %modb = "simpleb"
        %modf = "simplef"
       ' Simulation range
        %simstart = "2001q1"
        %simend = "2025q4"
       ' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
       ' equations in backward-looking model
        model {%modb}
        {\mbox{\ensuremath{\mathsf{M}}}} append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*zpinf+ cp(2) * ygap
        {\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}}.append rate_u = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap)
        {%modb}.append rate = @recode( rate_u>rate_min,rate_u,rate_min)
        {\mbox{\mbox{(modb)}}}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*zygap + cy(2) * (rate - zpinf)
        {\modb}.append zpinf = @movav(pinf(-1),4)
        {\mbox{\mbox{modb}}}.append zygap = \mbox{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$0$}}}movav(ygap(-1),4)
```

```
' equations in expectations errors model
 model {%modf}
 {%modf}.append ezpinf = zpinf - pinf(1)
 {\modf}.append ezygap = zygap - ygap(1)
' coefficients
 coef(2) cy
 cy.fill .50, -.02
 coef(2) cp
 cp.fill .50, .02
 coef(3) cr
 cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
 smpl @all
 %vars = {%modb}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
   %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
  series \{\%tmp\} = 0
  next
 %vars = {%modf}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
  %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
   series \{\%tmp\} = 0
  next
' declare mce variables and instruments
 %instrus = "zpinf_a zygap_a"
 %errs = "ezpinf ezygap"
' assign tracking add factors
 smpl %simstart %simend
 {%modb}.addassign @all
 {%modb}.addinit(v=n) @all
 {%modf}.addassign @all
 {%modf}.addinit(v=n) @all
' Section 3: Simulation
 %zb = "yes"
```

```
%sufm = "_1"
{\modb}.scenario(n,a=\sufm) "multiplier"
{%modf}.scenario(n,a=%sufm) "multiplier"
if %zb = "yes" then
 smpl @all
 rate_min = -1
 else
 rate_min = -9999
 endif
smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
ygap_a = ygap_a - 5
%mopts = "mod_b=%modb,mod_f=%modf,mce_instrus=%instrus,mce_errs=%errs"
%aopts = "meth=qnewton"
%sopts = "type=single"
smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
scalar elapsed = @toc
show elapsed
series zero = 0
smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
graph gr1.line zero rate{%sufm} pinf{%sufm} ygap{%sufm}
%title = "Negative Output Shock"
if %zb = "yes" then
 %title = %title + "\r(zero bound imposed)"
 %title = %title + "\r(zero bound not imposed)"
  endif
gr1.addtext(t,c,font(14)) %title
show gr1
```

This code is written to file srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg. Defines:
example4, used in chunk 10.
Uses mce_run 102 and mce_solve_library 95 194.

#### A.24 srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg

```
191
     \langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg 191 \rangle \equiv
       ' This example illustrates the two optimal policy simulation types
           - Simulate the effects of a positive shock to the output gap
            using sequentially
            (a) the model's interest rate rule
            (b) the opt simulation type to find the optimal interest rate
            path under commitment
            (c) the opttc simulation type to find the optimal time-consistent
            or discretionary interest rate path; note that the solution in
            this case is only approximate
            In both (b) and (c) the policy instrument is the residual of
            the interest rule
          - The illustrative loss function penalizes equally weighted,
            discounted, squared deviations of the output gap,
            inflation, and the first difference of the interest rate.
       ' Section 1: Workfile, model name, simulation range
         include mce_solve_library
       ' Workfile
         %wfstart = "2000q1"
         %wfend = "2100q4"
         %mainpage = "main"
         wfcreate(wf=aaa,page={%mainpage}) q {%wfstart} {%wfend}
       ' Model name
         %mod = "simple"
       ' Simulation range
         %simstart = "2001q1"
         %simend = "2025q4"
```

```
' Section 2: Model, coefficients, and data
' equations
 model {%mod}
 {\mbox{\mbox{(mod)}}}.append pinf = cp(1) * pinf(-1) + (.98-cp(1))*pinf(1)+ cp(2) * ygap
 {\mbox{\mbox{(mod)}}}.append rate - rate_aerr = cr(1)*rate(-1)+(1-cr(1))*(cr(2)*pinf + cr(3)*ygap
 {\mbox{\sc ($mod$}}.append ygap = cy(1) * ygap(-1) + (.98-cy(1))*ygap(1) + cy(2) * (rate - pinf)
 {\mod}.append drate = rate - rate(-1)
, coefficients
 coef(2) cy
 cy.fill .50, -.02
 coef(2) cp
 cp.fill .50, .02
 coef(3) cr
 cr.fill .75, 1.5, 0.5
' set all data to zero
 smpl @all
 %vars = {%mod}.@varlist
 for !i = 1 to @wcount(%vars)
  %tmp = @word(%vars,!i)
  series \{\%tmp\} = 0
  next
' Section 3: Optimal policy setup
' targets, instruments
 group opt_instrus rate_aerr
 group opt_targs pinf ygap drate
' desired target trajectories
 smpl @all
 series pinf_t = 0
 series ygap_t = 0
 series drate_t = 0
' loss function weights
```

```
%discount = ".99"
 %y_weight = "1.0"
 %p_weight = "1.0"
 %r_{weight} = "1.0"
 smpl @all
 series ygap_w = @val(%y_weight)
 series pinf_w = @val(%p_weight)
 series drate_w = @val(%r_weight)
 !discount = @val(%discount)
 smpl %simstart+1 %simend
 ygap_w = !discount * ygap_w(-1)
 pinf_w = !discount * pinf_w(-1)
 drate_w = !discount * drate_w(-1)
' Section 3: Simulations
 text shock1
 shock1.append smpl {%simstart} {%simstart}
 shock1.append series ygap_a = ygap_a + 3
' run the simulation using the monetary policy rule
 %mopts = "create,mod=%mod,adds,track"
 %aopts = "jinit=linear"
 %sopts = "type= single,txt=shock1,scen,suf=_1"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
 smpl @all
 series rate_rule = rate_1
 series pinf_rule = pinf_1
 series ygap_rule = ygap_1
' run the simulation using opt
 %mopts = ""
 %aopts = ""
 %sopts = "type=opt,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
 smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
 call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
```

```
smpl @all
    series rate_opt = rate_1
    series pinf_opt = pinf_1
    series ygap_opt = ygap_1
  ' run the simulation using opttc
    %mopts = ""
    %aopts = ""
    %sopts = "type=opttc,instrus=opt_instrus,targs=opt_targs"
    smpl {%simstart} {%simend}
    call mce_run(%mopts,%aopts,%sopts)
    smpl @all
    series rate_opttc = rate_1
    series pinf_opttc = pinf_1
    series ygap_opttc = ygap_1
  'graph
    smpl %simstart %simstart + 39
    series zero = 0
    graph gr1.line zero rate_rule rate_opt rate_opttc
    graph gr2.line zero pinf_rule pinf_opt pinf_opttc
    graph gr3.line zero ygap_rule ygap_opt ygap_opttc
   graph gr4.merge gr1 gr2 gr3
    %title = "Effects of Positive Output Shock Under Three Policy Responses"
   %title = %title + "\r1. An intertial interest rate rule (_rule)"
    %title = %title + "\r2. Optimal policy under committment (_opt)"
   %title = %title + "\r3. Optimal time-consistent policy (_opttc)"
    gr4.addtext(t,c,font(14)) %title
    show gr4
This code is written to file srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg.
  example5, used in chunk 10.
Uses mce_run 102 and mce_solve_library 95 194.
```

## A.25 srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg

#### A.26 srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg

```
195
       \langle srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg\ 195 \rangle \equiv
         subroutine data_transformations()
         ' Subroutine for FRB/US state-space model package to
         ' transform raw data from EViews database to observables
         ' used in the estimation of the state-space model.
         ' 1. Data transformations
         series lpop = 100*log(n16)
         {}^{\prime}Business - product side
         series nbp = xbn
         series bp = log(xb)*100 - lpop
         series gdp = log(xgdp)*100 - lpop
         'Buseness - income side
         series dsnst_q = xgdpn - xgdin
         series nbi = nbp - dsnst_q
         series rbi = nbi/(pxb/100)
         series bi = log(rbi)*100 - lpop
         ' Employment Business sector
         series eb = log(lep)*100 - lpop
         ' Workweek
         series hb = log(lhp)*100 - lpop
         series bww = hb - eb
         ' Employment Rate
         series erate = 100*log((100-lur)/100)
         ' Participation Rate
         series lfpr = 100*log(lf/n16)
         ' Variables for TMFP:
         series lks = 100*log(ks) - lpop
         series llqualt = 100*log(lqualt)
         series lveoa = 100*log(veoa)
         ' Series for the price equation
```

series c1pcex = @pca(pcxfe)

```
series engylag_pcex = 0.5*(uces(-1)+uces(-2))*@pca(pcer(-1))
series \ sw\_coreimp\_pcex = 0.5*((emon/xgden)+(emon(-1)/xgden(-1)))*@pca(pmo/pcxfe)
series dum84 = @year>=1985
                    ''' Nixon wage-price control programs
series frzbulg = 0
smpl 1971q3 1974q1
frzbulg = 1
smpl 1974q2 1974q4
frzbulg = -3.666
' For the output-sector ratio, we use the median unbiased approach of Stock
' and Watson (1998). Thus, tau_oti is the ratio of the variances of the level
' and drift shocks.
scalar tau_oti = .033260 ' modifier for the drift totfactor (OSR*) error term
' 2. Prior starting values for states.
     For mean zero level states, set prior to zero.
     For other level states, set prior to a data-based
         value near the start of the sample.
    For most drift terms, set prior to zero.
        Exception is trend MFP, set equal to sample average.
' Cycle
           icycle =
scalar
          icycle1 =
scalar
                          0
          icycle2 =
scalar
' Measurement error
scalar
          ie3p =
                          0
scalar
          ie3i =
' Levels of trends
                                @elem(gdp, %eststart) - @elem(bp, %eststart)
scalar
         itotfactor =
                               .965*(@elem(bp, %eststart) - 0.725*(@elem(eb, %eststart)
scalar
          itmfp =
                                   + @elem(bww, %eststart)) - 0.275*@elem(lks, %eststart)
                                   - 0.725*@elem(llqualt, %eststart) _
                                   - (.035/.965)*@elem(lveoa, %eststart))
scalar
                                @elem(bww, %eststart)
          itww =
                                @elem(eb, %eststart) - @elem(erate, %eststart) _
scalar
          ithtfactor =
                                - @elem(lfpr, %eststart)
```

```
scalar
            itlfpr =
                                  @elem(lfpr,%eststart)
  scalar
           iterate =
                                  @elem(erate, %eststart)
  ' Initial drift terms
  scalar igtotfactor =
                                  0.0
  scalar igtmfp =
                                 1.7
  scalar igtww =
                                 0.0
 scalar igthtfactor =
scalar igtlfpr =
                                 0.0
                                  0.0
  scalar nstate = 25
  ' The mpriors *must* be in the same order as the states are in the model object
  vector(nstate) mpriors
  mpriors.fill
                0, ie3p, ie3i, 0, 0, _
                0, 0, icycle, icycle1, icycle2, _
                 itotfactor, igtotfactor, itmfp, igtmfp, itww, _
                 itww, igtww, ithtfactor, ithtfactor, igthtfactor, _
                 itlfpr, itlfpr, igtlfpr, iterate, iterate
  ' Set starting values for variance priors
       Variance priors set at a high value. In estimation, variance
       drops sharply in early periods of estimation sample.
  sym(nstate) vpriors
  for !d = 1 to nstate
    vpriors(!d, !d) = 3
    next
  ' A tighter prior for drift variances,
  vpriors(14,14) = 1
                      ' igtmfp
                      'igtww
  vpriors(17,17) = 1
                     ' igthtfactor
  vpriors(20,20) = 1
  endsub
This code is written to file srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg.
Defines:
  data_transformations, used in chunks 10, 202, and 205.
```

#### A.27 srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg

```
198
      \langle srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg 198 \rangle \equiv
        subroutine ss_estimation()
        ' Subroutine for FRB/US state-space model package to
        ' estimate the model parameters.
        ' 1. Starting values for parameters.
        ' All of the coefficients in equations appear as beta or phi.
        ' Note that some values that are set here are hard coded in the estimation code below
        call initial_values
           Model
        sspace {%modname} ' Declare a new state-space model object
        ' 2. Output equations.
        ' In the output equations, trend output is related to the capital stock, energy inter
        ' and trends for labor input using a production function. The parameters of the production
        ' function are hard-coded to the values in the FRB/US model.
        ' GDP observable
        {\modname}.append @signal gdp = totfactor + tmfp/.965 + 0.725*(terate + tlfpr + thtfactor)
                                       + 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa _
                                       + cycle + beta(11)*beta(6) + beta(11)*e3p + rexo
        {\modname}.append @state rexo = [var=0.0000001^2]
        ' Buisines sector product-side observable
        {\modname}.append @signal bp = tmfp/.965 + 0.725*(terate + tlfpr + thtfactor + tww)
                                       + 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa _
                                       + beta(10)*cycle + beta(6) + e3p
        {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}modname}}}.append {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$0$}state}} = {\mbox{\mbox{$0$}beta(602)*e3p(-1)}} + {\mbox{\mbox{$re3p$}}}
        {%modname}.append @ename re3p 'business prod error
        {\modname}.append @evar var(re3p) = (beta(125)^2)
        ' Business sector income-side observable
        {\modname}.append @signal bi = tmfp/.965 + 0.725*(terate + tlfpr + thtfactor + tw
                                       + 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa _
                                       + beta(10)*cycle - beta(6) + e3i
```

```
{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{\sc M}}}}}.append @state e3i = beta(602)*e3i(-1) + re3i
{%modname}.append @ename re3i 'business income error
{\( \)modname\\ \).append @evar var(re3i) = (beta(126)^2)
' 3. Labor equations.
' Workweek observable
' To make this equation more consistent with the FRB/US workweek specification,
' a contemporaneous change in the cycle is included as well as the level of the
' cycle. In addition, the coefficient on the lagged gap term in this equation is
' hard-coded at a value similar to that implicit in the FRB/US model.
{%modname}.append @signal bww = tww _
             + phi(20)*(cycle-cycle1) _
             + phi(22)*cycle1 _
             + 0.82*(bww(-1)-tww1) _
             + eww
{\modname}.append @state eww = [var=beta(104)^2]
' Employment observable
{%modname}.append @signal eb = terate + tlfpr + thtfactor + _
             + phi(30)*cycle _
             + phi(31)*(eb(-1)-(terate1 + tlfpr1 +thtfactor1)) _
             + eeb
{\modname}.append @state eeb = [var=beta(105)^2]
' Employment rate observable
{%modname}.append @signal erate = terate + phi(50)*cycle _
                     + phi(51)*(erate(-1)-terate1) _
                     + eerate
{%modname}.append @state eerate = [var=beta(106)^2]
' Labor force participation observable
{\modname}.append @signal lfpr = tlfpr + phi(40)*cycle _
                     + phi(41)*(lfpr(-1)-tlfpr1) _
                     + elfpr
{\modname}.append @state elfpr = [var=beta(107)^2]
' 4. Price observable
        {%modname}.append @ename ec
        {\modname}.append @evar var(ec) = (beta(109)^2)
          {%modname}.append @signal c1pcex = _
          beta(401)*c1pcex(-1) + (1-beta(401))*(ptr(-1)+.1) _
        + beta(404)*(((.50*cycle + .33*cycle1 + .17*cycle2 )) ) _
                + beta(405)*@movav(engylag_pcex(-1),6) _
                + beta(406)*@movav(dum84*engylag_pcex(-1),6) _
```

```
+ beta(407)*frzbulg _
        + beta(408)*sw_coreimp_pcex + beta(409)*sw_coreimp_pcex(-1) _
        + ec
' 5. State equations
' Cycle state
{\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{$\%$}}}}append {\mbox{\ensuremath{\mbox{$\%$}}}} = beta(1)*cycle(-1) + beta(2)*cycle1(-1) + ecycle
{%modname}.append @state cycle1 = cycle(-1)
{\modname}.append @state cycle2 = cycle1(-1)
{%modname}.append @ename ecycle
{%modname}.append @evar var(ecycle) = (beta(111)^2)
' Trends
' Totfactor = OSR* in F.R.(2011)
' tau_oti is taken from FR(2011)
{\mbox{\sc (\frac{1}{1})}} + 0.25 \times .95 \times ({\mbox{\sc gtotfactor}}(-1)) + 0.5 \times .95 \times ({\mbox{\sc gtotfactor}}(-1)) + 0.5 \times .95 \times ({\mbox{\sc gtotfactor}}(-1))
                                         etotfactor + 0.25*egtotfactor
{\modname}.append @state gtotfactor = .95*gtotfactor(-1) + .05*beta(213) + egtotfactor
{%modname}.append @ename etotfactor
{\modname}.append @evar var(etotfactor) = (beta(112)^2)
{%modname}.append @ename egtotfactor
{\modname}.append @evar var(egtotfactor) = (4*((tau_oti))*beta(112))^2
' Multi-Factor Productivity (OPH*)
{\mbox{\color{modname}}}.append {\mbox{\color{color{modname}}}}. append {\mbox{\color{color{color{modname}}}} + 0.25*.95*(gtmfp(-1)) + 0.25*0.05
{\mbox{\sc (Mmodname)}}.append @state gtmfp = 0.95*gtmfp(-1) + 0.05*beta(214) + egtmfp
{%modname}.append @ename etmfp
{%modname}.append @evar var(etmfp) = beta(114)^2
{%modname}.append @ename egtmfp
{\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}}}}append {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$@$}}}} var({\mbox{\mbox{$e$}}} = 0.14^2 , beta(115)^2
      For the workweek, employment-sector ratio, and LFPR, the level variances are has
      This hard-coding is done for convenience in production work. In particular, the
      values are close to the values these parameters take on when they are freely ear
      However, the t-ratios for these parameters are not very high, and that impreci:
      to sluggish convergence; imposing these values shortens the time needed for es-
, Workweek (WW*)
{\mbox{\sc wmodname}}.append {\mbox{\sc wt}} = tww (-1) + 0.25*.95*(gtww(-1)) + etww + 0.25*.05*beta
{%modname}.append @state tww1 = tww(-1)
{%modname}.append @ename etww
{%modname}.append @ename egtww
{\modname}.append @evar var(etww) = 0.1^2
```

```
{\modname}.append @evar var(egtww) = beta(117)^2
     ' Employment Sector Ratio (ESR*)
     {\mbox{\colored} {\colored} {\mbox{\colored} {\mbox{\co
                                                                                                 0.25*egthtfactor + ethtfactor
     {%modname}.append @state thtfactor1 = thtfactor(-1)
     {\( \)modname\).append @state gthtfactor = 0.95*gthtfactor(-1) + egthtfactor
     {%modname}.append @ename ethtfactor
     {\mbox{\em Modname}}.append @evar var(ethtfactor) = .01^2 , beta(118)^2
     {%modname}.append @ename egthtfactor
     {%modname}.append @evar var(egthtfactor) = (beta(119)^2)
     ' Labor Force Participation (LFPR*)
     {\mbox{\mbox{\mbox{$\%$}}}}append @state tlfpr = tlfpr(-1) + 0.25*(.95*gtlfpr(-1) + egtlfpr) + etlfpr
     {\modname}.append @state tlfpr1 = tlfpr(-1)
     {%modname}.append @state gtlfpr = 0.95*gtlfpr(-1) + egtlfpr
     {%modname}.append @ename etlfpr
     {\mbox{\em Modname}}.append @evar var(etlfpr) = .05^2 ' beta(122)^2
     {%modname}.append @ename egtlfpr
     {\modname}.append @evar var(egtlfpr) = beta(123)^2
     ' Employment Rate (ER*), no drift
     {%modname}.append @state terate = terate(-1) + eterate
     {\modname}.append @state terate1 = terate(-1)
     {%modname}.append @ename eterate
     {%modname}.append @evar var(eterate) = beta(124)^2
     {%modname}.append @vprior vpriors
     {%modname}.append @mprior mpriors
     freeze({%modname}_results) {%modname}.ml(m=100,showopts)
     endsub
This code is written to file srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg.
    ss_estimation, used in chunk 202.
Uses initial_values 208.
```

# A.28 srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg

```
202
      \langle srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg~202\rangle \equiv
        ' Program to estimate the FRB/US state-space model and
        ' generate estimates of model states.
        ' Subroutines:
            To transform data
       include "./data_transformations"
            To estimate the model
       include "./estimation_code"
        include "./initial_values"
       close @all
       wfcreate kf_data q 1949:1 2020:4
       %estend = "2013q4"
       %eststart = "1963q2"
       %datastart = "1949q1"
       sample estsample %eststart %estend
       sample datasample %datastart %estend
       %datasmpl = %datastart + " " + %estend
       %modname = "ss_model"
        ' Retrieve variables from the database
        ' Definitions of series in database
            See FRB/US model documentation for more complete descriptions
        , XGDP - GDP, cw 2009$
        , XGDPN - GDP
        'XB - BLS Business output, 2009$
        ' XBN - BLS Business output
        , XGDIN - GDI
        ' PGDP - Price index for GDP, cw
        ' PXB - BLS Business price
                - Employment in business sector (employee and self-employed)
        , LEP
```

```
, LHP
        - Aggregate labor hours, business sector (employee and self-employed)
, LUR
        - Civilian unemployment rate (break adjusted)
, LF
        - Civilian labor force (break adjusted)
        - Noninstitutional population, aged 16 and over (break adjusted)
'N16
       - Capital services, 2009 $
' LQUALT - Labor quality, trend level
      - Average energy-output ratio of existing capital stock
, AEOV
' PCXFE - Price index for personal consumption expendits ex. food and energy, cw (NIA def.)
' PCER - Price index for personal consumption expenditures on energy (relative to PCXFE)
, bwo
        - Price index for imports ex. petroleum, cw
, UCES
       - Energy share of nominal consumption expenditures
' EMON - Imports of goods and services ex. petroleum
' XGDEN - Nominal Absorption
        - 10-year expected inflation (Hoey/Philadelphia survey)
%dbin = "state_space_data"
dbopen %dbin as dbin
string varlist = " xgdpn xbn pgdp pxb pcxfe pcer xgdp xb lep uces emon xgden ptr "
varlist = varlist + " ks lqualt veoa lhp lur lf n16 pmo xgdin "
fetch(d=dbin) {varlist}
' Make model observable series, set priors
smpl datasample
call data_transformations
' Specify and estimate model, save for re-use
smpl estsample
statusline Estimating model
call ss_estimation
{\modname}.makefilter saved_results
```

```
' Create states
  {%modname}.makestates(t=pred) *_prs
                                           ' one-step ahead state predictions
  {%modname}.makestates(t=filt) *_1
                                          ' filter states
 {%modname}.makestates(t=smooth) *_2
{%modname}.makestates(t=disturb) *err
                                          ' smoothed states
                                          ' estimate of the disturbances
 {%modname}.makestates(t=filtse) *se
                                           ' RMSE of the filtered states
  {%modname}.makestates(t=smoothse) *se2
                                          ' RMSE of the smoothed states
  {%modname}.makesignals(t=pred) *_pr
                                           ' one-step ahead signal predictions
  {%modname}.makesignals(t=resid) *_res
                                           ' error in one-step ahead signal prediction
  {\modname}.makesignals(t=stdresid) *_sres ' standardized one-step ahead prediction :
  ' Transformation into FRB/US mnemonics
 series xbt = \exp((tmfp_2/.965 + 0.725*(terate_2 + tlfpr_2 + thtfactor_2 + tww_2) +
                 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa +lpop)/100)
 series hmfpt = gtmfp_2
 series qlfpr = exp(tlfpr_2/100)
 series hqlfpr = (gtlfpr_2/400)*qlfpr(-1)
 series hqlww = gtww_2
 series huxb = gtotfactor_2
 series leppot = exp((tlfpr_2+terate_2+thtfactor_2)/100) * n16
 series lurnat = 100*(1-exp(terate_2/100))
 series qlww = exp(tww_2/100)
 series uxbt = exp(totfactor_2/100)
 series xgdpt = xbt * uxbt
 series xgdo = exp(cycle_2/100)*xgdpt
 wfsave saved_results_new
This code is written to file srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg.
Defines:
 frbus_supply_estimation, used in chunk 10.
Uses data_transformations 195, initial_values 208, and ss_estimation 198.
```

#### A.29 srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg

```
205
      \langle srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg 205 \rangle \equiv
        ' Program is part of the FRB/US state-space model package.
        ' frbus_supply_filter takes a previously estimated state-space model and
        ' generates estimates of model states.
        ' Subroutines:
            To transform data
        include "./data_transformations"
        close @all
        wfcreate kf_data q 1949:1 2020:4
        %estend = "2014q3"
        %eststart = "1963q2"
        %datastart = "1949q1"
        sample estsample %eststart %estend
        sample datasample %datastart %estend
        %modname = "ss_model"
        ' Retrieve variables from the database
        ' Definitions of series in database
            See FRB/US model documentation for more complete descriptions
        , XGDP
                - GDP, cw 2009$
        , XGDPN - GDP
        ' XB - BLS NFB output, 2009$
        ' XBN - BLS NFB output
        , XGDIN - GDI
        ' PGDP - Price index for GDP, cw
        ' PXB - BLS NFB price
        , LED
                - Employment in nonfarm business sector (employee and self-employed)
        , LHP
                - Aggregate labor hours, nonfarm business sector (employee and self-employed)
                - Civilian unemployment rate (break adjusted)
        , LUR
                - Civilian labor force (break adjusted)
        , LF
```

- Noninstitutional population, aged 16 and over (break adjusted)

'N16

- Capital services, 2009 \$

, KS

```
' LQUALT - Labor quality, trend level
' VEOA - Average energy-output ratio of existing capital stock
' PCXFE - Price index for personal consumption expendits ex. food and energy, cw (N
' PCER - Price index for personal consumption expenditures on energy (relative to
, bwo
       - Price index for imports ex. petroleum, cw
' UCES - Energy share of nominal consumption expenditures
' EMON - Imports of goods and services ex. petroleum
' XGDEN - Nominal Absorption
       - 10-year expected inflation (Hoey/Philadelphia survey)
' PTR
smpl datasample
%dbin = "./state_space_data"
dbopen %dbin as histdata
fetch(d=histdata) *
' Make model observable series, set priors
smpl datasample
call data_transformations
' Load saved model; run estimation step with previously estimated
' parameters as starting values (converges quickly).
smpl estsample
wfopen saved_results
copy saved_results::untitled\saved_results kf_data::untitled\{\modname}
wfclose saved_results
freeze({%modname}_results) {%modname}.ml(m=100,showopts)
' Create states
{%modname}.makestates(t=pred) *_prs
                                  ' one-step ahead state predictions
' estimate of the disturbances
```

```
{%modname}.makestates(t=filtse) *se
                                          ' RMSE of the filtered states
  {%modname}.makestates(t=smoothse) *se2
                                          ' RMSE of the smoothed states
 {%modname}.makesignals(t=pred) *_pr
                                          ' one-step ahead signal predictions
 {%modname}.makesignals(t=resid) *_res
                                        ' error in one-step ahead signal predictions
 {\modname}.makesignals(t=stdresid) *_sres ' standardized one-step ahead prediction residual
  ' Transformation into FRB/US mnemonics
 series xbt = \exp((tmfp_2/.965 + 0.725*(terate_2 + tlfpr_2 + thtfactor_2 + tww_2) + _
                 0.275*lks + 0.725*llqualt + (.035/.965)*lveoa +lpop)/100)
 series hmfpt = gtmfp_2
 series qlfpr = exp(tlfpr_2/100)
 series hqlfpr = (gtlfpr_2/400)*qlfpr(-1)
 series hqlww = gtww_2
 series huxb = gtotfactor_2
 series leppot = exp((tlfpr_2+terate_2+thtfactor_2)/100) * n16
 series lurnat = 100*(1-exp(terate_2/100))
 series qlww = exp(tww_2/100)
 series uxbt = exp(totfactor_2/100)
 series xgdpt = xbt * uxbt
 series xgdo = exp(cycle_2/100)*xgdpt
This code is written to file srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg.
```

frbus.supply.filter, used in chunk 10.  $Uses \ {\tt data_transformations} \ 195.$ 

## A.30 srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg

208  $\langle srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg 208 \rangle \equiv$  subroutine initial_values

```
coef(703) beta
coef(60) phi
beta(1)
               = 1.497516
beta(2)
              = -0.540927
beta(213)
              = -0.328852
beta(214)
              = 1.061453
beta(216)
              = -0.266658
beta(10)
               = 1.325310
beta(401)
               = 0.625693
beta(404)
              = 0.090059
             = 0.440360
beta(405)
beta(406)
               = -0.324208
beta(407)
              = -0.435237
beta(408)
               = 0.293555
beta(409)
               = 0.253904
               = 0.331366
beta(6)
beta(602)
               = 0.927692
phi(20)
               = 0.301616
phi(22)
               = 0.020651
phi(30)
               = 0.452297
phi(31)
               = 0.649965
phi(40)
               = 0.042475
phi(41)
               = 0.727876
phi(50)
               = 0.299981
               = 0.528947
phi(51)
beta(105)
               = 0.176896
beta(106)
               = 0.086226
beta(107)
               = 0.210419
beta(104)
               = 0.229143
beta(100)
              = 0.000001
               = 0.803236
beta(109)
beta(111)
               = 0.566205
beta(119)
               = 0.099423
beta(123)
              = 0.129325
beta(115)
               = 0.140001
beta(117)
               = 0.081062
beta(124)
               = 0.136532
               = 0.010000
beta(118)
```

```
beta(122) = 0.050000

beta(114) = 0.107852

beta(112) = 0.044151

beta(126) = 0.476765

beta(125) = 0.534807

beta(11) = 1/beta(10)
```

#### endsub

This code is written to file srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg. Defines:

initial_values, used in chunks 10, 198, and 202.

# Appendix B

# Notes, Bibliography and Indexes

#### B.1 Chunks

```
⟨check.sh 10⟩
(compute derivatives of loss function targets wrt instruments 164)
(compute derivatives of mce targets wrt mce instruments 130)
\langle convert \ mcz \ inequality \ constraints \ 168 \rangle
\langle copy \ it \ 65 \rangle
\langle copy \ series \ into \ group \ 89 \rangle
(create common variables, strings, matrices, vectors, and tables 117)
\langle create \ new \ group \ 91 \rangle
(create wage and expectation variables in forward looking model 176)
(determine default method, linesearch, and other options 112)
(determine endogenous and exogenous variables 109)
⟨find next delimiter 171b⟩
\langle find\ variable\ description\ 74 \rangle
\langle form\ table\ 85 \rangle
\langle graph \ it \ 67 \rangle
⟨interpolate unavailable observations 92⟩
\langle load\ frbus\ coefficients\ 11b \rangle
(load frbus coefficients call 12a)
\langle load\ frbus\ equations\ 13 \rangle
(load frbus equations call 14a)
\langle load\ frbus\ with\ transformed\ subsidiary\ model\ 172 \rangle
\langle load \ mce \ coefficients \ 15 \rangle
\langle load \ mce \ coefficients \ call \ 16 \rangle
\langle load \ mce \ equations \ 18 \rangle
\langle load \ mce \ equations \ call \ 21 \rangle
\langle load \ some \ equations \ 23 \rangle
```

```
\langle load \ some \ equations \ call \ 25 \rangle
\langle load\ variable\ information\ 27 \rangle
\langle load\ variable\ information\ call\ 28a \rangle
(main optimal control simulation with inequality constraints 151)
\langle main\ unconstrained\ optimal\ control\ simulation\ 147 \rangle
\langle make\ statistics\ 86 \rangle
\langle mce\ solve\ library\ 96 \rangle
\langle mce \ solve \ library \ change \ history \ 100 \rangle
\langle model\ consistent\ armijo\ optimization\ rule\ 137 \rangle
(model consistent coefficient non-monotone step-length procedure 136)
(model consistent coefficient simulation 119)
⟨model consistent optimal time-consistent solution 156⟩
\langle names \ of \ all \ series \ in \ group \ 90b \rangle
⟨parse options containing equal signs 116a⟩
(parse options not containing equal signs 116b)
⟨plot historical residuals of key equations 72⟩
\langle plot \ it \ 66 \rangle
(quarterly date string shift 88)
\langle run \ model \ consistent \ expectations \ 102 \rangle
\langle set\ fiscal\ policy\ option\ 93 \rangle
(set group to zero 90a)
(set monetary policy fed funds rate 94b)
⟨set monetary policy option 94a⟩
\langle set\ options\ based\ on\ defaults\ and\ overrides\ 140 \rangle
\langle setup.sh 9 \rangle
⟨shift left 171a⟩
(simulate six ping simulations, aka simple IRFs 57)
\langle solve\ model\ consistent\ expectations\ model\ 166 \rangle
(solve model consistent instrument values 128)
(srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.cfs/ld.frbus.cfs.prg 11a)
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.frbus.eqs/ld.frbus.eqs.prg  12b\rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.cfs/ld.mce.cfs.prg 14b \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.mce.eqs/ld.mce.eqs.prg 17 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.some.eqs/ld.some.eqs.prg 22 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/ld.varinfo/ld.varinfo.prg 26 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/addins/regadd.prg 28b \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example1.prg 29 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example2.prg  32 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example3.prg 36 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/example4.prg \ 42 \rangle
\(\sigma \text{srcEview/frbus.package/programs/ocpolicy.prg 48}\)
\(\srcEview/frbus.package/programs/pings.prg\) 56\
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/plot.resids.prg 71 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/programs/stochsim.prg 75 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/subs/master.library.prg~87 \rangle
\langle srcEview/frbus.package/subs/mce.solve.library.prg 95 \rangle
```

```
\langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example1.prg\ 178\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example2.prg\ 181\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example3.prg\ 184\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example4.prg\ 188\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/example5.prg\ 191\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/mce.solve.package/mce.solve.library.prg\ 194\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/state.space.package/data.transformations.prg\ 195\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/state.space.package/estimation.code.prg\ 198\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.estimation.prg\ 202\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/state.space.package/frbus.supply.filter.prg\ 205\rangle \\ \langle srcEview/state.space.package/initial.values.prg\ 208\rangle \\ \langle stochastic\ simulations\ under\ variable\ expectations\ 76\rangle \\ \langle variable\ terminal\ values\ 138\rangle \\
```

#### B.2 Index

copyit:  $57, \underline{65}$ data_transformations: 10, 195, 202, 205 dateshift: 36, 48, 88, 92, 156example1: 10, 29, 178example2: 10, 32, 181 example3: 10, 36, 184example4: 10, 42, 188example5: 10, 191find_next_delimit: 168, 171b find_var_description:  $72, \underline{74}$ frbus.supply.filter: 10, 205 frbus_supply_estimation: 10, 202graphit: 57,67 group2group: 89 group2zero: 29, 32, 36, 42, 48, 57, 72, 76, 90a groupnames2string: 76,90b groupnew: 29, 32, 36, 42, 48, 57, 72, 76, 91 initial_values: 10, 198, 202, <u>208</u> interp_lin:  $76, \underline{92}$ ld_frbus_cfs: 10, 11a, 11b, 12a, 28b, 29, 36, 72, 76, 172 ld_frbus_eqs: 10, 12b, 13, 14a, 28b, 29, 36, 72, 76, 172 ld_mce_cfs: 10, 14b, 15, 16, 28b, 172  $ld_mce_eqs: 10, 17, 18, 21, 28b, 172$ ld_some_eqs: 10, 22, 23, 25, 28b, 172  $1d_{\text{varinfo}}$ :  $10, \underline{26}, \underline{27}, 28a, 28b, 72, 76$ make_frbus_mcevars: 32, 42, 48, 57, 100, 176 makestats: 76,86 master_library: 10, 29, 32, 36, 42, 48, 57, 72, 76, 87 mce_load_frbus: 32, 42, 48, 57, 100, 172

tableform: 76, 85

mce_run: 32, 42, 48, 57, 100, <u>102</u>, 117, 119, 178, 181, 184, 188, 191  ${\tt mce_solve_library:} \quad 10, \, 32, \, 42, \, 48, \, 57, \, \underline{95}, \, 178, \, 181, \, 184, \, 188, \, 191, \, \underline{194}$ mcz_algo: 102, 112 mcz_armijo: 119, <u>137</u> mcz_constraints: 140, 168  $mcz_derivs: 117, 119, \underline{130}$ mcz_equalopt: 102, 112, 116a, 119, 140, 172  $mcz_hasopt: 102, \underline{116b}, 119, 140$  $mcz_lmr: 119, 136$  $mcz_opt: 140, 147$ mcz_opt_deriv: 147, 151, 156, <u>164</u>  $mcz_opt_qp: 100, 140, 151$  $mcz_opt_setup: 102, 140$  $mcz_opt_solve: 147, 151, 166$ mcz_opt_tc: 100, 140, 156  $mcz_parsemod: 102, \underline{109}$  $mcz_sim: 100, 102, \underline{119}, 151, 156, 164, 166$ mcz_sim_setup: 102, <u>117</u>  ${\tt mcz_solvit:} \ 100,\, 117,\, 119,\, \underline{128},\, 136,\, 137$ mcz_terminal: 128,  $\underline{138}$ ocpolicy:  $10, \underline{48}$ pings: 10, 56, 57plot_resids:  $10, \underline{71}$  $\verb"plotit: \underline{66},\,67$ regadd:  $10, \underline{28b}$ set_fp: 29, 32, 36, 42, 48, 57, 76, 93 set_mp: 29, 32, 36, 42, 48, 57, 76, 94a  ${\tt set_mpvars2rff:} \ \ \underline{94b}$ shiftleft: 119, <u>171a</u>  $ss_estimation: 198, 202$ stochsim:  $10, \underline{75}$